

INSTRUCTIONS

Infantry Regt. 1831

AND

REGULATIONS

FOR THE

FORMATIONS AND MOVEMENTS

OF THE

CAVALRY.

SEVENTH EDITION.

PRINTED FOR THE WAR-OFFICE:

BY T. EGERTON, AT THE MILITARY LIBRARY,
NEAR WHITEHALL.

1813.

London: Printed by C. Roworth, Bell-yard, Temple-bar.

Adjutant General's Office,
17th June, 1796.

THE following Instructions and Regulations for the Formation and Movements of Cavalry, are, by his Majesty's Command, to be strictly observed and practised by the Cavalry Corps in general, in his Majesty's Service, till further Orders.

By Command of Field Marshal,
HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS, THE DUKE OF YORK.

WM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

Adjutant General's Office,
April, 1797.

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS is pleased to direct further, that every Officer of Cavalry shall be provided with a Copy of these Regulations, and the Commanding Officers of Corps are to take Care that this order be duly observed.

WM FAWCETT,
ADJUTANT GENERAL.

CONTENTS.

Sect.			Page.
1.	} <i>Formation</i>	{ <i>of the troop</i>	— 3
2.		{ <i>of the squadron</i>	— 4
3.	} <i>The squadron</i>	{ <i>takes order</i>	— 7
4.		{ <i>takes close order</i>	— 7

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES REGULATING MOVEMENTS.

5.	<i>Passaging and reining back</i>	—	—	9
6.	<i>Dressing</i>	—	—	9
7.	<i>Marching in front</i>	—	—	11
8.	<i>Wheeling</i>	—	—	13
9.	<i>Filing</i>	—	—	18
10.	<i>Inclining</i>	—	—	19
11.	<i>Pace</i>	—	—	21
12.	<i>Of the charge or attack</i>	—	—	22
13.	<i>Commands</i>	—	—	25
14.	<i>Movements</i>	—	—	28.
15.	<i>Taking lines of march and formation</i>	—	—	31
16.	<i>Breaking and forming squadrons</i>	—	—	35
17.	<i>Open column in general</i>	—	—	42
18.	<i>March in line</i>	—	—	51

GENERAL

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES THAT REGULATE
CHANGES OF POSITION, AND FORMATIONS OF
THE SQUADRON AND REGIMENT.

19.	<i>General modes of changing position</i>	—	54
20.	<i>Changes of position of a regiment</i>	—	57
21.	<i>General modes of formation</i>	—	59
22.	<i>General changes of position</i>	—	60
23.	<i>General rules in changing position</i>	—	60

OPEN COLUMN.

24.	} The regiment	wheels forward into open column	—	64
25.		wheels backward into open column	—	65
26.	<i>March to the flank in open column</i>			— 66
27.	} Change of direction	on a moveable pivot	—	67
28.		on a fixed point	—	68
29.		on the reverse flank	—	69
30.		on the pivot flank	—	70
31.	<i>Wheel in column of divisions of unequal strength</i>			70
32.	<i>Prolonging the line in open column</i>			— 71
33.	<i>Halt of the open column</i>			— 72
34.	<i>March of rear divisions of a column into a new direction</i>			— 72
35.	<i>Wheel of the column into line</i>			— 73
36.	} Open Column formed	behind a placed flanked division	—	75
37.		before a placed flanked division	—	75
38.		before and behind a central division	—	78
39.	<i>Open column of the line formed on a flank or central division</i>			— 80
40.	} Open Column	changes position to a flank	—	81
41.		enters a line at its head point	—	83
42.		enters a line at its rear point	—	85
43.		enters a line at its central point	—	86
44.	<i>Open column enters a line by diagonal march of its divisions</i>			— 87

CONTENTS.

vii

COUNTER MARCH.

45.	<i>Of each division</i>	—	89
46.	<i>Of the divisions of the column from rear to front successively</i>	—	90
47.	<i>Of the column, from rear to front, by divisions passing through each other</i>	—	93

CHANGES OF POSITION.

48.	} Open Column	{	changes position on a fixed division	—	94
49.			changes position on a distant point	—	96
50.			forms line by divisions passing beyond each other	—	97
51.			forms line facing to its rear	98	
52.			forms line by wheels to its reverse flank	—	98
53.	Countermarch of squadron, regiment or line				99
54.	Diminishing or increasing the front of the column of march				101

CLOSE COLUMN.

55.	Close column formed from line	—	109	
56.	The regiment forms close column	—	110	
57.	} March of column	{ to a flank	—	114
58.		{ to the front	—	115
59.	Change of direction in column	—	115	
60.	Countermarch of the divisions of the column		116	
61.	Deployment of column of half squadrons into line	— — —	119	
62.	Column of half squadrons forms column of squadrons	— — —	124	
63.	Deployment of column of squadrons into line		125	
64.	Oblique deployment of close column into line		126	
65.	Line formed from column, in the prolongation of its flank	— — —	127	
66.	Column at half distance forms line to its front		128	

ECHELLON.

ECHELLON.

67. <i>Wheel of divisions of the regiment into oblique echellon</i>	— — —	130
68. <i>March in oblique echellon</i>	—	131
69. <i>Wheel back into parallel line</i>	—	133
70. <i>March up into oblique line</i>	—	134
71. <i>Change of position forward or backward, on a flank or central division</i>	—	135
72. <i>Change of position on a distant point</i>		140
73. <i>March of direct echellon to the front, and formation in line</i>	— — —	141

OF THE LINE.

74. <i>General changes of position of a line</i>	—	144
75. <i>Taking up lines of march and formation</i>		148

OPEN COLUMN.

76. <i>Open column enters, marches, and forms on an alignement</i>	— — —	150
77. <i>Entry of the rear regiments of a column into an alignement, on which the front ones have halted</i>	— — —	152
78. } <i>Changes of</i>	<i>on a fixed flank division</i>	153
79. } <i>position</i>	<i>on a fixed central division</i>	153
80. }	<i>on a moving central division</i>	154
81. <i>Change of position by the rear regiments of a column marching directly to their new situation</i>	— — —	156
82. <i>Formation in line on detached adjutants, from assembly in column, or in mass</i>	—	159

CLOSE

CONTENTS.

ix

CLOSE COLUMN.

83. From column of march, to form close column and line	— — —	164
84. Oblique deployments	— — —	168
85. Several columns formed from the same line	—	169
86. Several columns formed in one line	—	169
87. Two columns exchange places	—	170
88. Two columns form in one line	—	170
89. Two columns form in two lines	—	171

ECHELLON.

90. Oblique position taken by the echellon march		173
91. When from an advance obliquely in echellon, the line changes position inwards	—	174
92. When echellons advance direct, from flank of the line to the front	— —	174
93. When a line formed on an enemy's flank, attacks in echellon	— — —	176
94. When a line formed oblique to an enemy attacks from a flank	— —	176
95. Echellon taken from column, or from a position parallel or oblique with respect to the enemy		178

THE LINE.

96. Advance in Line	— —	181
97. Retreat in Line, and passage of obstacles in line	— — —	185
98. Chequered retreat of the line	—	190
99. When the line retires by alternate squadrons, or half squadrons, in two lines	—	191
100. Inversion of the line	— —	192
101. When the commander of a line changes its position to a flank, without the help of advanced objects	— —	193
102. Attack of cavalry in front and flank		195

SECOND

CONTENTS.

SECOND LINE.

103.	<i>Two lines change position on a central point of the first line</i>	—	—	203
104.	<i>Two lines change position forward on a flank of the first line</i>	—	—	205
105.	<i>Two lines change position backward on a flank of the first line</i>	—	—	205
106.	<i>Two lines wheel into column, march to a flank, change direction, and take up a new position</i>			206
107.	<i>Passage of lines</i>	—	—	208
108.	<i>The column of route or march</i>		—	210

<i>Evolutions</i>	—	—	—	218
<i>When the regiment is to dismount</i>			—	231
<i>When the regiment is to mount</i>			—	234
<i>Inspection or review of a regiment of cavalry</i>				236
<i>Additional Instructions, 1st January, 1799</i>				264
<i>Skirmishing</i>	—	—	—	268
<i>Advanced guards</i>	—	—	—	272
<i>Advanced posts</i>	—		—	273
<i>Patroles</i>	—	—	—	275
<i>Trumpet and bugle horn soundings</i>			—	281

The appendix of the former editions, and the instructions of January, 1799, make a part of this edition ; which is also enlarged with some directions for the *passage of obstacles*, when marching in line (page 187)—*for skirmishing—conduct of advanced guards—advanced posts and patroles* (page 268.)

The following alterations are ordered in this edition :—When the squadron wheels to either flank (*ranks by three's*), the standard and his coverer are *in* the two center ranks of six men, and not between those ranks, as expressed in S. 16.—In the evolutions the squadron is ordered, instead of filing to front or rear from the flanks of squadrons, to make such filings from the same flank of half squadrons—At a review or inspection, the regiment marches past by half squadrons, and not by squadrons. Such other minute alterations as may be prescribed by this edition, are also to be observed.

The words of command given by leaders of squadrons, and which first come from those of the line and of regiments, are marked on the margin in CAPITALS.

The words of command given by leaders of half squadrons, divisions, or subdivisions, are marked on the margin in *Italics*.

Although *division* is understood in general to express the fourth part of a squadron, yet it is often applied to whatever part of a squadron at that time composes the front of a column.

INSTRUCTIONS

TO BE OBSERVED FOR THE

FORMATION AND MOVEMENTS

OF THE

CAVALRY.

1799.

THE SQUADRONS of CAVALRY are composed each of two troops.

REGIMENTS are composed of two, three, or more squadrons.

A LINE is composed of two or more regiments.

The *troop* and the *squadron* are formed two deep.

Each SQUADRON is to be told off—by

Tellings off
in squadron.

Half squadrons.

Four divisions.

Eight sub-divisions.

Ranks by three's.

Files right and left.

Half squadrons ; is the squadron divided in two equal parts, in the center of which is the standard. Half squadrons.

Four, or divisions ; is each half squadron divided in two equal parts ; but so that the center half shall subdivide exactly by three. Divisions.

Eight, or subdivisions ; is each fourth division divided in two equal parts, for the purpose of marching on a small front ; but in this case the sub-division must not be less than six files, otherwise the squadron will open out. Sub-divisions.

Ranks by three's ; is each half squadron told off by three's, Ranks by three's.

B

three's, beginning at the standard (exclusive) and telling off to each flank of the squadron: this telling is calculated for the retreat of the squadron, by each rank independently wheeling to the right about by three's; also for a flank march of the squadron, six men in front, by each rank wheeling to the flank by three's and moving on.—The deployments from close column into line, and from line into close column, are also made ranks by three's—and it is the only rank wheeling (with that by two's) essential to the movements of the squadron.

Files.

Files, right and left; is each half squadron told off by alternate files, beginning at the standard (exclusive) and proceeding to each flank of the squadron. This telling off is calculated for the reining back, and doubling alternate files in order to dismount; also for a flank march of the squadron, four men in front, by each rank wheeling up to the flank by two's and moving on.

Divisions of ranks.

The *divisions of ranks* arise of course out of those of the squadron—they are *half ranks*, *quarter ranks*, *eighths of ranks*. Ranks may be occasionally told off by *four's*, for purposes of parade.

Distances of ranks.

The *distances of ranks* are taken from the head of the rear rank horse to the tail of the front one—Those essential are two:

Close order.

Close order; half the length of a horse (about three and a half feet) sufficient for the wheeling of ranks, by three's; it is the constant and essential distance of formation and movement; all other distances are only occasional exceptions from it, used in exercise and situations of parade.

Order.

Order; a distance equal to one third of the squadron taken in dismounting and in parade.

Other distances of exercise may be taken when so required by explanatory commands.

The *distance of files*, at which the regiment forms and moves, is six inches from boot-top to boot-top, being calculated for the gallop as well as the walk of the squadron. Distance of files.

Close files; is the distance taken before dismounting, when each man's boot-top touches, but without pressing. Close files.

Open files; the full breadth of a horse from boot-top to boot-top; it is the distance left when from close files the left files rein back to dismount, and is a distance at which recruits and horses must be much exercised. Open files.

S. 1. *Formation of the Troop.*

Each *troop* forms on its own troop parade, in a rank entire, and sized according to the size roll. The inspection is then made according to the form ordered. Formation of the troop.

The commanding *officer* tells off the rear rank: forms two deep at close order, by filing or by reining back and passaging; and counter-marches the ranks if necessary, according to the place of the troop in squadron. He places an officer on each flank of the front rank, and covers him by a corporal; he tells the troop off in two divisions, and places a serjeant on the right of the left division, covered also by a corporal. He also tells off by files, right and left; the quarter-master is in the rear of the center, the trumpeter is on his right, and the farrier on his left, each the length of a horse distant; the remaining serjeants are also in the rear. Telling off the troop.

The *troop*, thus formed, is marched, either a division in front; or ranks by two's (four men in front); or by file (two men in front) if it is necessary, to the

rendezvous of the squadron, where it is again formed and halted.

Sizing the
troop and
squadron.

Of the two *troops* that compose the squadron, the right one is sized from left to right, and the left one from right to left; that the largest men and horses may be in the center of the squadron; and sizing well must not be neglected.

If the *troop* is to act singly, and not to join in squadron, it will then be additionally told off by ranks by three's, and also by sub-divisions, if it be sufficiently strong to admit of it.

S. 2. *Formation of the Squadron.*

Formation
of the squa-
dron.

When the *squadron* is to be formed, the two troops that compose it close in to each other—the officers then move out, and form in a rank advanced two horses length, fronting to their troops. The serjeants and covering corporals rein back, and dress with the quarter-master in the rear.

Completing
the files,
and posting
officers.

The commanding *officer* of the squadron completes the files, and equalizes the troops, by shifting a file or two if necessary. The officers are then ordered to their post in squadron, viz. one in the center for the standard, and one on each flank of the front rank; each of these three is covered by a corporal. The other officers place themselves in the rear as *serrefiles*, at two horses length distant from the rear rank.

Telling off
the squa-
dron.

The commanding officer then tells off the squadron—by two, or *half squadrons*—by four or *divisions*, and places a serjeant, covered by a corporal or dragoon, on the right of each of the four divisions, except the right one. He then tells off each half squadron by ranks, by *three's*, and each half squadron by alternate *files*, right and left, beginning from the standard (exclusive) and telling off to each flank:

The

The non-commissioned officers to be included in these tellings off, and it is to be observed that the file on the right of the standard is to be told a left file, and that on the left of the standard, a right file, in order to favour the movements of ranks by two's.

Where the strength of the squadron admits of each *division* being told off exactly into *three's*, it is an eligible circumstance; but at any rate care must be taken that the *center* divisions divide exactly by *three's*, (and their flank serjeants be posted accordingly) although the flank ones do not, and are thereby a file or two stronger or weaker. If there is at last a two or a four on either flank, it must so remain, as in the most advantageous situations for aiding the wheels.

The squadron is also told off in sub-divisions, each being the half of a division.

When the *squadron* is formed, the officers and non-commissioned officers are thus placed.

Commanding officer	{	Advanced a horse's length before the standard.	Officers and non-commissioned officers posted in squadron.
Two officers -	{	One on each flank of the front rank, covered by a corporal.	
One officer -	{	Carrying the standard in the center of the front rank, covered by a corporal.	
Three serjeants	{	One on the right of the front rank of each of the four <i>divisions</i> , except the right one; and each covered by a corporal or dragoon.	

The supernumerary or *serrefile* officers, and serjeants, the quarter-masters and trumpeters are in the rear of their troops divided in a line, at two horses distance from the rear rank, and their business is to attend to the movements of the squadron, and particularly to the good behaviour of the rear rank. Farriers are behind *serrefiles* a horse's length.

Post of supernumeraries or *serrefiles*.

Replacing
of officers,
&c.

By this distribution, allowance is made for sick and absent officers, and non-commissioned officers; and if a sufficient number of any rank is not present, then serjeants replace officers, corporals replace serjeants, and intelligent men replace corporals.

Quarter-
Master.

The essential post of the *quarter-masters* is always in the rear of the squadron when in line; but in changes of position in column, they may, when necessary, be ordered to conduct pivots of divisions; and when the line is forming or dressing in a given direction, they may be usefully employed in giving true points in that line to their respective regiments.

Officers or
serjeants in
the ranks.

Such *officers* or *serjeants*, and their coverers (except the standard) as are on the flanks, or are in the ranks, are told off as files and as flank men of divisions, and on all occasions *file* or *wheel* with them; except when the ranks wheel by three's or by two's, then the standard, together with the flank officers, and those that cover them, *turn* singly about, each man on his ground, and retain the same relative place in the squadron, whether going to the front, or rear, or flanks.

Coverers of
officers and
serjeants.

When any of those *officers* or *serjeants* shift from their proper places, to conduct pivots, &c. as hereafter directed, their coverers occupy such place during their absence, and on their return again resign it. When such officers or serjeants, without shifting, naturally become pivot leaders, their coverers place themselves behind the third file of the division their leaders conduct; because pivot leaders of divisions are never in column to be covered, but each to remain single on the flank of the front rank of his division, that he may thereby be the more conspicuous, and that those several leaders may the more accurately and easily cover each other, when the march is in a straight alignement; or when the column is halted in such alignement, and is to form the line by the wheel up of its divisions to its proper flank.

General cir-
cumstances
of forma-
tion.

In order to preserve each *troop* entire, it is not material, if one division is a file stronger than another; and

and in general, the flank divisions will be strongest from the addition of officers. Officers will be posted with their troops as much as possible. Corporals not wanted to mark the divisions, or to cover officers and serjeants, will be in the ranks according to their size, or placed on the outward flank file of their troops. Farriers are considered as detached, in all situations of manœuvre.

All these *general* circumstances of formation apply and take place, whether the squadron is composed of two or more troops, and whether the troops are more or less strong.

S. 3. *When the Squadron takes order.*

The SQUADRON being formed at *close order*, if (parade) *order* is to be taken, the commanding officer gives the word, REAR RANK TAKE ORDER! and the distance is immediately ascertained by an officer or non-commissioned officer, of the rear, and behind which ever flank the dressing is to. At the word MARCH! the rank reins back to its proper distance; the standard, as also all the officers, move out briskly a horse's length, and divide themselves in front of their own troops and of the squadron, at equal distances: the whole are dressed to a flank, and the commanding officer is a horse's length in front of the standard. The trumpeters move up on each flank of the front rank, and the quarter-masters and farriers remain in the rear.

S. 4. *When the Squadron takes close order.*

When from *order* the squadron is to take *close order* —The word, TAKE CLOSE ORDER! is a caution. At the word, the squadron takes close order.

the word MARCH! the rear rank moves forward to close order, and officers, non-commissioned officers, trumpeters, &c. take their posts as before.

Intervals of squadrons. In regiment or line, the squadrons form with an *interval* betwixt each, equal to one third of their actual front; nor is there to be any additional interval in a line betwixt regiments, or brigades.

Wheelings, filings, formings, and in general the movements of manœuvre, and changes of situation of the squadron and regiment, are made at a quick and vigorous pace, determined by the commands that are at the time given.—But in operations that arise, and are required from the nature of a long march, all violent and unnecessary exertions are as much as possible to be avoided, and in proportion to the extent of the body must circumspection and attention increase.

General observations. *Division* is often used as a general word for whatever part of a squadron the front of a column may at the time be composed of.

The squadron never breaks into *divisions* of three's or two's. When the word three's, or two's, is made use of, it always means, *ranks* by three's or two's.

The half wheel, the quarter wheel, the eighth wheel of divisions, means their wheeling the *half*, *quarter*, or *eighth* of the quarter circle.

When three's wheel *about*, it is always to the right about, unless otherwise expressly ordered.

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES, REGULATING THE MOVEMENTS OF THE SQUADRON, REGIMENT, OR LINE.

The same GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES must govern and determine the movements of the squadron, regiment,

ment, or line. Those of the smaller bodies are therefore deduced, and arise from such as are required in, and are essential to, the operations of the greater body.

All the VARIOUS movements of the squadron, or larger body, are compounded of—*Passaging and reining back—Dressing—Marching in front—Wheeling* General movements of the squadron.
—*Filing—Inclining.*

S. 5. *Passaging and reining back.*

Passaging and reining back are lessons of the manege, and necessary in opening or closing of *ranks, files, or intervals* of squadrons.

When ground is to be taken to the flank by pas- Passaging.
saging, the whole body moves at the word, *To the—PASS!* and halts at the word, *HALT!* and therefore successive movement of files is not to be permitted, nor will it be attempted if the command is given in a strong and decided tone.

In reining back of bodies or ranks, the whole look Reining back.
to the hand to which they ought to form or dress; the movement is never to be hurried: to be made in order, and the horses to be kept straight.

S. 6. *Dressing.*

Dressing is occasional to right, center, or left, as ordered.

The Squadron and all bodies till otherwise ordered,	{	<i>Dress</i>	{ To the hand to which they form. <small>Dressing.</small>
		<i>March</i>	{ To the hand to which they were dressed when halted.
		<i>Halt</i>	{ To the hand to which they were dressed in marching.

When

When the squadron or line is halted, *dressing* is generally ordered to the right.

When the entire squadron moves in line, or wheels, *dressing* is to the standard in the center.

When a column of entire squadrons marches in an alignment in order to wheel up and form line, *dressing* and *covering*, as in other similar columns, is to the pivot flank.

Dressing, or placing a rank or number of men in a perfect straight line, is attained by a twofold operation. The first is, that the men, by being in their persons square (and their horses also) and looking towards the flank man, endeavour of themselves to conform to and prolong the intended line, which he and others successively take up. The second is, that during this operation, an officer of each forming division, being at that fixed flank point, and either having a given object to the other hand ascertained before hand, or from his general knowledge of the general direction that should be taken, by a glance of the eye, assuming some distant point in it for himself: he from the standing flank corrects, and lines upon such point, the man and men next to him, and successively the whole of the body or division who are then looking towards him.

Dressing, and its correction, are therefore to be always understood as a progressive operation. The first, second, third files next the fixed flank, being first truly placed, the others then rapidly and successively conform to them, under the controul of the officer on that flank, who knows the direction the whole should stand in.

In *dressing*, the horses must stand straight to the front, and the men's bodies must be square, each just casting his eye along his next man's face, but without turning his head. The men must be uniformly placed on horseback, for on this squareness of man and horse both *dressing* and movement must essentially depend.

In

In *dressing*, when halted, a small turn of the head may be necessary, and is allowed in order to facilitate it. When the word, *DRESS!* is alone given, in line or column, it means to the hand to which the troops are then looking: but when eyes are at the same time to be turned to a new point, in order to dress, it should be so expressed by the addition of *right*, *center*, or *left*. Whenever the word *Halt, dress!* is given by an officer to his division, it always implies that the men are looking, or are to look to such officer, who is then himself on the pivot flank of his division.

All *dressing* is to be made with as much alacrity of officer and soldier as possible, and the dresser of each body, as he accomplishes the operation, will give a caution *Front!* that heads may then be replaced, and remain square to the front. If the body to be dressed is extensive, the dresser must justly place one division before he proceeds on that which is beyond it.

Every *dresser* of a body in a given line, must in his own person be placed on that line, while he is directing such operation.

S. 7. *Marching in Front.*

The SQUADRON being supposed halted, and dressed Marching in line. to a flank, the *leader* must take care that he is exactly placed before the standard, and square with respect to the front of the squadron, or the general line. In this position, from habit, and with a glance of the eye, he determines the perpendicular direction which he is to follow, and cannot fail to remark two or more small objects on the ground, which are in the line of this direction. Line of march taken.

The leader gives the word, THE SQUADRON WILL Advance ADVANCE! as a caution—at the word, MARCH! of the each man casts his eye to the standard, puts his horse squadron. in motion, and dresses with the greatest exactness to the standard, and non-commissioned officer that covers it.

The

Attention of standard. The attention of the *standard* bearer is to keep a horse's length from the leader; to follow him exactly and scrupulously; and slacken or quicken his pace according to the words of command, or directions he receives. This must be done gradually, and without hurrying or springing forward, which will always occasion a shake in the squadron.

Attention of the ranks. The attention of the rest of the squadron is invariably fixed on the center; that of the front rank on the standard; and that of the rear rank on the non-commissioned officer covering it, who gives the distance of ranks as ordered.

Attention of rear rank. The distance of files is taken and preserved from the center. This is more immediately the business of the front rank. The rear rank, at the same time that they dress to their center man, attend to the distance of files, and to the covering their file leaders; but this without an eye being ever turned from the center on any account.

Squareness of man and horse. Each man and horse must be placed perfectly square to the front, otherwise the squadron can never move justly; the ranks cannot be dressed, or the proper distance of files preserved.

Attention of leaders of squadrons. As the great business of every leader of a squadron is to carry it forward in its exact perpendicular direction, it requires his whole attention. The standard, officers, and serrefiles, must take care that the squadron is dressed, and up to its leader, who must not be looking back to give such directions, otherwise he will undoubtedly swerve, and not conduct it with that steadiness, which is so essential, especially in relative movements, and which depend entirely upon himself.

If the squadron marches in parade *order*, the line of officers dress to the standard, and the rest of the squadron move as before directed.

Alteration of direction. If a small alteration is to be made in the *direction* of the squadron, the leader gradually circles into such new

new direction, with which the squadron complies, by advancing one flank, and retaining the other till the change is effected, and a straight line resumed: or, according to circumstances, this intention will be answered by a flank wheel of the squadron till it is perpendicular to the new direction, when it again advances.

When the word, HALT! is given, the whole halt, Halt of the by the center. The word, DRESS! squadron. instantaneously follows, and the file on each side of the standard diligently conforming to the general direction, gives the line to the rest of the squadron, who immediately, if necessary, correct the distance of files.

If the squadron is to remain halted, and a greater Dressing the degree of exactness is wished for, at the word EYES squadron. RIGHT! the whole look to the right, and the commanding officer from the right, taking his object of dressing beyond the left, rectifies any small internal deviation that may then exist, and which must be very inconsiderable. A second betwixt each word of command ought to answer the above purposes.

If one movement is immediately to succeed another, a critical dressing need not be required, and the squadron may remain looking to the center, till the order for marching is again given.

S. 8. *Wheeling.*

Wheeling is one of the most essential and im- Wheeling. portant operations of the squadron, necessary in many changes of position, and in the formations of column and of the line.

When the entire squadron is to *wheel*, a *caution* is Wheel of given to that purport, and to which hand.—At the the squa- word MARCH! the front rank of the squadron re- dron. mains dressed to the center, the leader fixes his eye
C and

and makes his circle on the standing flank man; the standard follows him exactly, and the squadron wheels with the same uniform front, at such a pace as is requisite to keep every where dressed with the standard.—The rear rank and the serrefiles look to the wheeling flank, and incline at the same time that they wheel, so as always to cover their front leaders.

Attention of standard. The *standard* must take care never to oblige the wheeling man to exceed a moderate gallop, otherwise the rear rank, which has still more ground to go over, cannot keep up, the squadron will wheel loose, and in disorder, and be longer in dressing, than if it had come about at a slower pace, but close and connected.

Attention of flanks. The *flanks* must always conform to the center, in case the leader does not take his ground as exactly as he ought. At any rate the standard is the guide for the pace, and to preserve the distance of files from.

Halt of squadron. The leader must take care to time his words, HALT! DRESS! the instant before the wheel is completed, otherwise an overwheel or reining back will be the consequence. The whole halt and dress by the center.

Divisions of the squadron in column. The SQUADRON breaks into column of any of the divisions in which it is told off, by each of those divisions wheeling up the quarter circle. If the body is in motion (as in column) the wheels of the divisions all begin at the word WHEEL! If halted, they are begun at the word MARCH!

Rear rank. In all division wheelings, the whole look to the wheeling hand. In all wheelings, the rear rank must rein back at the standing flank, and incline towards the wheeling hand, in order to cover.

Halt of divisions. At the word HALT! DRESS! given when the wheel is completed, the whole turn eyes and dress to the standing flank, and remain so till a new direction is given,

given, which will be EYES $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\}$ to the pivot flank,
when necessary.

Wheelings of the squadron, or its parts, from the *Wheelings*
halt, are made on the flanks, except those of ranks *from the*
by three's, which are made on the middle man of *halt*.
each.

The distances of divisions of the squadron when in *Distances in*
column, are taken and preserved from front rank to *column,*
front rank. *after wheel-*
ing.

When the squadron is to be formed by the wheel- *Wheel of*
ing up of its divisions, there must be no false intervals, *divisions*
and the rear ranks must rein back, and incline, so as *into squa-*
not to interrupt the front ranks coming up together. *dron.*

In division Wheelings, the whole keep closed lightly *Attention in*
towards the hand they wheel to, and must avoid press- *wheels of*
ing the pivot man off his ground. The outward flank *divisions.*
man looks to his rank, he of course regulates the
pace at which the wheel is made, he must not press
in on his rank, nor turn his horse's head towards the
standing flank; all the horses' heads must be kept ra-
ther outwards (for to attempt to bend them inwards,
would certainly occasion a crowding on the standing
flank) and the croupes lightly closed inwards with the
leg. The pivot man of the wheel turns his horse on
his fore feet, keeps his ground, and comes gradually
round with his rank.

Wheels of divisions of the squadron or line, are *Wheels of*
made on a HALTED, or on a MOVEABLE PIVOT. *divisions*
When on a *halted* pivot, they are made from line into *made on a*
column, or from column into line: and also gene- *halted, or*
rally by the column of manœuvre or march, when *on a move-*
moving on a considerable front, and when the wheel *able pivot.*
by which its direction is to be changed, approaches
to or exceeds the quarter circle. When on a *move-*
able pivot, they are generally used and ordered when
c 2 the

the front of the column is small, and its path winding and changeable.

On a halted
pivot.

Although on the completion of the wheel in column, on a halted pivot, the pause made after the *Halt ! Dress !* gives time in large fronts for exact dressing before the *March !* is resumed, yet in small ones, where that pause is short, there is no time for such operation ; the attention to, and preservation of the true distance, being then the material object.— Whenever the wheel made is less than the quarter circle, the pause after the wheel will be considerable ; should the wheel be greater than the quarter circle, it must be accelerated, otherwise more than one division will be arrived and arrested at the wheeling point.

On a move-
able pivot.

When wheels or changes of direction of bodies in column, are made on a MOVEABLE pivot, both flanks are kept in motion, the *pivot* one always describing part of a circle, and the *reverse* flank, and intermediate men of the division, by a compound of inclining and wheeling, conforming to the pivot movement.

Wheel
made to the
pivot hand
and move-
able.

When the change is to be made to the *PIVOT* hand (and the whole being in motion) the leader of the head division, when at the distance of twenty or thirty yards from the point of intersection of the old and

new direction, will give the word $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\} \text{Shoulder}$

forward ! which is a caution for each man to give a small turn of his horse TOWARDS the pivot hand, and the leader himself carefully preserving the rate of march, without the least alteration of pace, will in his own person begin to circle BEFORE the line, from the old, so as to enter the new direction twenty or thirty yards from the point of intersection, which he in this case leaves at some small distance WITHIN his pivot hand—when this is effected (the rest of his division having during the transition, and on the principle

ciple of gradual dressing, conformed to the direction he is giving them) he will give the word *Forward!* for the division to pursue the straight line—the leader of the second, and of every other division, when he arrives at the ground on which the first began to wheel, will in the same manner follow his exact track, always preserving his proper distance from him.

When the change is to be made to the REVERSE hand, the pivot leader having arrived as before at the spot where he gives his word $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\}$ *Shoulder for-*

Wheel
made to the
reverse
hand and
moveable.

ward! for each man to give a small turn of his horse's head FROM the pivot hand; will begin in his own person to circle BEHIND the line from the old, so as to enter the new direction twenty or thirty yards from the point of intersection, which in this case he leaves at some small distance WITHOUT his pivot hand. The rest of his division, by giving way, having gradually conformed to his movement, he will at the proper instant order *forward!* and resume a straight line.

During the change to either hand, the whole continue looking to the pivot flank, which never alters the rate of the then march; but the reverse flank is in the one case obliged to slacken, and in the other to quicken its movement.

In this manner, without the constraint of formal wheels, a column, when not confined on its flanks, may be conducted in all kinds of winding and changeable directions; for if the changes be made gradual, and circling, and that the pivot leaders pursue their proper path at the same uniform equal pace, the true distances of divisions will be preserved, which is the great regulating object on this occasion, and to which every other consideration must give way.

Change in
direction of
columns.

S. 9. *Filing.***Filings.**

Filing is an operation of the squadron, of use in broken or embarrassed ground, which will not allow of movements on a greater front. It is a situation in which horses move free and without confinement, but in which the squadron or its parts lengthen out, and take up much more ground than what they stand on in line, and is therefore to be had recourse to only from necessity.

Attentions in filing.

All horses heads are instantly to be turned at the command to *File!* ready to move off without loss of distance. The leaders of files go off short and quick in their ordered direction, and are followed close by each man as it comes to his turn, so as to leave no unnecessary interval from one to another, and instantly to get off the ground. After being once in file, a distance of a yard from head to tail may be taken, so as to trot or gallop the easier if required. Every alteration of pace ought to be made as much as possible by the whole file at once; if this is not observed, a crowding and stop in the rear will always attend such alteration.

Distances when in file.

The file leaders preserve such distances as they ought from which ever hand they are to dress to, and the followers of each file are only attentive to cover, and be regulated by their proper file leaders. In file the rear rank dresses by and is regulated by its front rank.

Attentions in forming.

In forming, each man must come up in file to his place, and by no means move up to his leader, till that leader has formed to which ever hand the file is forming to—The whole must follow the exact tract of the first leader, and come up one by one into their respective places in squadron.

General and necessary filings.

Filings that may be required from the squadron, are—Filing from either or both flanks to front, flank, or rear—Filing from the center of the squadron

dron to the front or to the flank——Filing single men by ranks, or by front and rear rank men alternately, from either flank of the squadron.

In the filings of the squadron, the serrefiles take their place in the rear of the files, unless the ground will allow them to remain on the flank of the rear rank; but their general and proper position is in the rear of the files, because filing is in general an operation of necessity, which the nature of the ground requires. Serrefiles in filing.

In all formings from file, the leaders of ranks instantly cover each other, take the ordered front, and halt——The file forms to the *front*, by moving up and closing to its leaders. The file forms to the *rear*, by doubling round its leaders, who have themselves turned and faced. The file forms to its *proper* flank, by turning and closing in to its leaders.—The file forms to its *reverse* flank, by passing, turning, and successively closing to its leaders.—In formations from file, the whole, till otherwise ordered, dress to the hand to which the squadron or division forms. Formings from file.

S. 10. *Inclining.*

INCLINING is a movement, by which the squadron is carried on in a parallel direction, at the same time that it is gaining ground to the flank——It is of great use in the marching of the line in front, to correct any irregularities that may happen. It is equivalent to the oblique marching of the infantry. It enables to gain the enemy's flank without exposing your own, or without wheeling or altering the parallel front of the squadron. Inclining.

At the order to INCLINE! each man makes a half face on his horse's fore feet, by which means each will appear to be half a head behind his flank leader; and the whole will look to the hand to which they are to incline.

The

The leading officer on the flank, with a glance of his eye, ascertaining his points, marches steadily upon them, at whatever pace is ordered. Every other man in the squadron moves in so many parallel lines, with respect to him, and preserves the same uniformity of front and files, as when he first turned his horse's head.

Great care is to be taken that the whole move at the same pace, and quicken or slacken together, as ordered. If the flank that follows is too forward, the center will be crowded; if it is too backward, the squadron will be too much in file.

At no time of the incline ought the former front of the squadron or distance of files to be altered—But whenever the word **FRONT!** is given, the squadron (by each man at the same instant turning his horse) should be formed in a direction perfectly parallel to its former front, and ready to dress and move on by the standard.

In the Incline, the rear rank moves in the same manner, and is of course regulated by the front rank, which it takes care to conform to.

The distance of files at six inches, allows the squadron to incline in perfect order, while its new direction does not pass an angle of 34° with respect to its former one, and at this angle it will be understood always to incline, unless it should be required to gain as much or more ground to the flank as to the front: in that case, the squadron must either wheel up, and march upon the flank point, or it will fall more or less into file, according to the degree of obliquity required, by moving each horse retired, half neck, or head to boot, &c. &c.

As this is generally intended for a brisk movement of the squadron, either at a trot or gallop, no horse is to cross his legs or passage in inclining, but each is to move in a straight line.

S. 11. *Pace.*

The paces of Cavalry cannot be regulated by length of step and numbers, in a minute, as those of the infantry are, nor is it so material.

The *Walk ! Trot !* and *Gallop !* are the three natural paces, and of each of these there are different degrees of quickness; but at which ever of them the squadron is conducted, the slowest moving horse at that pace must be attended to, otherwise different kinds of motions will exist at the same time in the squadron, and tend to disunite it. Horses deficient in any of those paces, or not broken to a steadiness in each of them, are improper for the squadron.

Though single horses or small bodies may instantaneously change from one pace to another; yet a squadron or a number of bodies will move with more ease and uniformity, when such transitions are made gradually through the different paces, as from a *Walk* to a *Slow Trot ! Quick Trot ! Slow Gallop ! Quick Gallop !* and vice versa: each of these by its separate word of command, which may follow as quickly as is found necessary.

All alterations of pace must be made as much as possible at the same instant, by each separate body that composes a line or column.

Though in slow movements of the line or squadron, and on a march, the *Walk !* is the common pace used, yet, in general, all changes of position and manœuvres should be made at the *Trot* or *Gallop*, according to circumstances, beginning gently to avoid hurry, and ending gently to avoid confusion in forming. The intermediate times of such movement may be conducted with rapidity, and much depends on the eye of the officer, and well timing the words of command.

Great bodies, consistent with perfect order, cannot move with the same degree of rapidity as smaller ones, and therefore an allowance proportionable to their
their

their extent must be made in conducting them, whether in line or column, and this only the eye, practice, and attention can determine.

S. 12. *Of the Charge or Attack.*

The great force of Cavalry is more in the offensive than the defensive: therefore the attack is its principal object.

All the different movements of the squadron should tend to place it in the most advantageous situation to attack the enemy.—The charge is that attack made with the greatest velocity and regularity possible, to break the order of the opposite enemy, which will always ensure his defeat.

When the squadron is to charge, the leader gives the words of command—**MARCH!**—**TROT!**—**GALLOP!**—**CHARGE!**—**HALT!**—and **FORM!**

It depends on the commanding officer to lead at such a pace as that the flanks and rear rank may always keep up.—Every alteration of pace must be made at the same instant by the whole squadron.

Whatever distance the squadron has to go over, it may move at a brisk trot till within two hundred and fifty yards of the enemy, and then gallop.—The word **CHARGE!** is given when within eighty yards, and the gallop increased as much as the body can bear in good order.—Any attempt to close the files at the instant of the charge, would only increase the intervals in a line, and tend to impede the free movement of each horse, who at no time requires to be more independent than when galloping at his utmost exertion, and every rub to right or left diminishes that effort in a degree.

At the instant of the shock, the body must be well back; the horse not restrained by the bitt, but determined

mined forward by the spur: rising in the stirrups, and pointing the sword, will always occasion a shake in the squadron; it will naturally be done when necessary.

It is in the uniform velocity of the squadron, that its effect consists; the spur as much as the sword tends to overset an opposite enemy; when the one has nearly accomplished this end, the other may complete it.

In every part of the charge and in quick movement, the standard must be very exact in following the leader; and the men particularly attentive in keeping up to, and dressing to their standard. They will have their horses in hand, and perfectly square to the front, their heads well up, which will keep them under command.—Men must remain firm in their saddles; an unsteady man will always make a horse so; one such will interfere with the movement and effect of a whole squadron.

When the shock of the squadron has broken the order of the opposite enemy, part may be ordered to pursue and keep up the advantage; but its great object is instantly to rally and to renew its efforts in a body, either to the front, or by wheeling to take other squadrons in flank.

If the squadron fails in its attack, and is itself put in disorder or confusion, it must retire as well as it can, to make way for those that support it, and must rally as soon as possible under the protection of the others.

A squadron should never be so much hurried, as to bring up the horses blown to the charge, and this will much depend on circumstances and the order they are in.

In the real charge, where resistance is met with, the halt will be gradual; but in exercise, to show the readiness of man and horse, it is frequently made from the gallop—by each man raising his bridle hand, closing

closing his legs to his horse's sides, and inclining his body well back, and stopping his horse on his haunches.

When after the charge, part of the squadron disperse to pursue, they should open out and cover the front and intervals. When they return and form, each man should observe his point, come round by his proper flank, and by the rear of his respective rank, and on no account cross near the front of the squadron.—This direction chiefly respects the squadron in exercise.

Every soldier who is attacked, and whose order is broken, looks upon himself as beaten, and is not easily brought to rally, if the first advantage is pursued; and the operation is in itself difficult, after he has once turned to the rear.—But the body that attacks, though put in confusion, will easily unite while its motion is progressive and forward, and acts with a confidence and exertion which will never be found in those that stand still.

Though there are many occasions in war, where with advantage, from the nature of their arms and other circumstances, infantry can and ought to wait the attack; yet there are hardly any where it can be eligible for cavalry to receive it: though circumstances of situation may prevent a line from advancing much, it should never absolutely stand still to receive the shock, otherwise its defeat is inevitable.

If the ground is open, the shock must be given with vigour; if it is so embarrassed as to prevent the acting in body, less can be expected in such a situation adapted to another arm, and improper to bring cavalry into, whatever their superiority of numbers may be; but if in spite of all local disadvantages their exertion is requisite, it must be made with spirit and as much in body as possible.

In the walk the sword is carried with the blade resting on the right arm.—In the trot and gallop the right hand must be steadied on the right thigh, the point of the sword rather inclining forward—and in
the

the CHARGE the hand is lifted, and the sword carried rather forward and crossways across the head, with the edge outwards.

The regiments and squadrons must be well dressed before they move; horses perfectly straight, and carried on so during the whole attack; files on no account crouding; paces even and determined; horses in hand, and perfect steadiness and attention of every individual.

S. 13. *Commands.*

All COMMANDS must be given by officers, firm, loud and explicit: every officer must therefore be accustomed to give such commands, even to the smallest bodies, in the full extent of his voice; by such bodies he must not only be heard, but by the leaders of others who are dependent on his motions.—The justness of execution, and the confidence of the soldier, can only be in proportion to the firm, decided and proper manner in which every officer of every rank gives his orders.—An officer who cannot thoroughly discipline and exercise the body entrusted to his command, is not fit in time of service to lead it against the enemy: he cannot be cool and collected in the time of danger; he cannot profit of favourable circumstances from an inability to direct others; the fate of many may depend on his ill or well acquitting himself of his duty. It is not sufficient to advance with personal bravery, it is requisite to have that degree of intelligence which should distinguish every officer according to his station; nor can soldiers ever act with spirit and animation, when they have no reliance on the capacity of those who do conduct them.

Command and duty of officers.

Commands of CAUTION, being such as are preparatory to a movement, should be sufficiently full and explanatory.—Commands of EXECUTION should be short, and avoiding unessential words.

Nature of commands.

Commands given by respective leaders. The commanding officers of regiments give and repeat all general commands, which are also shortly and quickly repeated by commanding officers of squadrons, especially such as are executory, as *MARCH! HALT! DRESS! &c.*—It is only when the squadrons and line are broken into parts, that the division officers give commands, and those chiefly executory, as *Halt! Dress! &c.*; also the several words necessary for the wheels made in column of march by each division; the several words necessary when the divisions come up successively from open or close column, into line or column, whether conducted by line or flank movements; and in general whenever their divisions are moving as distinct though dependent bodies.—But the wheeling from column into general line, or from line into general column, is made at the word *MARCH!* repeated by leaders of squadrons; the whole column is also put in march, and halted, by word from the leaders of squadrons, as is the squadron and regiment in all movements of the line in front.

All commands cannot be ascertained. It is impossible to ascertain the words of command to be given in all cases; where such are not pointed out, they must depend on the circumstances of the situation, and be short, clear, and expressive of what is to be done.

When commands are not distinctly heard. When a general order is not heard by a part of the line, each regimental commander (when the intention is obvious and undoubted) will conform as quickly as possible to the movement which he sees executed on his right or left, according to the point from whence he perceives it to begin—but squadron and division officers execute only on the orders of their regimental commander.

Commands by ranks, or by divisions. When *rank* makes a part of any word of command, (as in ranks by three's or two's) it means that each rank separately should perform the same thing; but when the command by *squadron*, *half squadron*, *division*, or *sub-division*, is given, it implies always that the rear rank, which is at close order, should accompany and

and cover the front rank in all wheelings, inclinings, and movements of the body.

After the chief commander has announced the orders, and particularly the words of execution, as **MARCH! FORM! HALT! &c.** the repetition of them by every other individual concerned, must not be strictly successive, but as much as can be in a volley, to beget that precision of movement, which, in manœuvre, is indispensable; and the larger the body, the more essentially does this circumstance operate.

Quick repetition of commands most essential.

In the quick movements and manœuvres of cavalry, there is not time for the full and formal words of command.—On such occasions they must be rapidly given, much abridged, and all expletives omitted; instead of—

Abbreviation of commands.

Ranks by three's, to the right about Wheel! say, *Three's about wheel!*

Ranks by three's, to the left wheel!—*Three's left Wheel!*

Divisions to the right incline!—*Right incline, &c. &c.* which, from the nature of the movements, and to troops well trained, are sufficiently intelligible.

When several regiments manœuvre together, the commanding officer of the line or column gives his short orders of caution or execution to the commanding officer of the regulating squadron of the line, or of the head of the column, where he in general is himself; and sometimes to the commander of the regiment to which he is then nearest, and each regimental commander repeats them loud, without delay, to his squadron leaders. When any complicated or combined movement is to be made, which requires previous explanation, it must be communicated clearly to the commanders of corps by detached officers, before the execution can be ordered to commence.—The several chiefs of brigades watch over and direct the internal movements of their respective bodies;

Commands how given in line.

they repeat the general orders of execution given, if they see that it is necessary, and announce such preparatory ones as are verbally sent to them.

Signals.

Partial SIGNALS of the trumpet for or by particular regiments, must not be given in line, but from the regiment where the chief commander is; and by his particular direction such signals may, when proper, be made for the whole, though not repeated by regiments—as if halted, to MARCH! if walking, to TROT! to GALLOP! to CHARGE! to HALT! to RALLY! and form, if broken and dispersed.—Such signals are to be regarded as warnings to commanding officers, but their execution ought to follow immediately in consequence of their orders.—And at all times the quickness and intelligence of commanding officers of regiments and squadrons, in line or column, must prompt them instantly to perform their corresponding part of a movement, whenever they evidently see that it is their duty so to do.—The only signals of the trumpet that seem necessary to be repeated by the regiments of a line, are those to CHARGE! and those to RALLY! and assemble.

S. 14. Movements.

**General
movements
how made.**

The MOVEMENTS of all great bodies are made either in line or column.—In line they are regulated by a named squadron; in column they are directed by its head division, and the commander of the whole is near the regulating body.—There are very few cases in which the center ought to regulate, although the direct march of the line in front appears to be the easiest conducted by the center.—If an enemy is to be turned, and an attack made, it is by the flank that such movements are led.—If the line is thrown backward or forward, it is generally on a flank point
(of

(of appui.)—If the line breaks into column, it is the head or leading flank of that column which conducts, and whose writhes and turnings are followed by every other part of the body, and such head becomes again a flank when the line is formed.—It is seldom that an attack is formed from the center, and a movement seldom need be.—The commander will therefore be on whichever flank directs the operations of the line, and by which he proposes to make the attack, or to counteract the attempts of the enemy.

Movements
generally
regulated
by a flank.

Movements must be divided into distinct parts; and each executed by separate and explanatory words of command.

Division of
movements.

Alterations of position, in considerable bodies, must begin from a previous HALT, however short; except giving a new direction to the heads of columns, or increasing or diminishing their front, which may be done while in motion.—As the principle of moving, forming, and dressing upon given and determined points is just, quick changes of position of a considerable body formed in line, attempted while on the move, and not proceeding from a previous halt (however short) will be false and defective; the effects of which, though not so apparent in a single squadron or regiment, would be very obvious in a line or column of any extent.—A pause between each change of situation, so essentially necessary to the movements of great bodies, should seldom be omitted in those of small ones; squareness of dressing, the exact perpendiculars of march, and the correct relative position of the whole, are thereby ascertained. Such alterations of situation made from the halt, may, when necessary, succeed each other instantly and quickly; no time need be taken up in scrupulous dressing, but every one may be immediately apprized of the following movement, which circumstances require.

Alterations
of position
to begin
from a halt.

Necessity
of precision
in the move-
ments of
single regi-
ments.

In the movements of a **SINGLE** regiment, and in the taking up of a new position, it may not seem material whether a flank of it is placed a few yards to the one hand or other, or whether the line formed on is exactly directed on any certain point.—But when a regiment makes a part of a more considerable body, then all its positions being relative to other regiments, and to given points, if its formations are not accurate and just, it will create general confusion, and give false directions and distances to those whose situations may be determined by it.—The necessity of every single regiment being accustomed to make its changes of position and formation on determined points, is therefore obvious, and to which they should be carefully trained.

What is re-
quired of a
line of ca-
valry.

If **OFFICERS** are observing of, and attentive to their true distances of divisions, and of the covering of their pivot flanks, the most considerable column of cavalry ought to be able, in changing its position—to **ENTER** on a given alignment, at a brisk **TROT!**—to **HALT!**—to **WHEEL INTO LINE!**—to **ADVANCE;**—and to **CHARGE!**—without more than a momentary pause between each operation of the halt, wheel, and advance, and without being under any necessity of dressing, correcting distances, or alteration whatever; and unless regiments are equal to, and can be depended on for such operation, no critical or advantageous measure when close to the enemy can be attempted; and the great efforts that cavalry ought to make, from the celerity and justness of its movements, will be lost.

What is re-
quired of
an officer.

An **OFFICER** must not only know the post which he should occupy in all changes of situation, the commands which he should give, and the general intention of the required movement; but he should also be master of the principles on which each is made, and of the faults that may be committed, in order to avoid

avoid them himself, and to instruct others.—These principles are in themselves so simple, that moderate reflexion, habit, and attention, will soon shew them to the eye, and fix them in the mind.

Although the NATURE of routes and of roads may sometimes limit common marches to be made on a very small front; yet flank marches near an enemy, or changes of position in presence of an enemy, cannot be effected with precision, firmness, or certainty, on a less front than ranks by *three's*, or, indeed, when possible, on a front of a *division*, (or of a *sub-division*, if the squadron is strong, as from 48 to 60 files) for then the steadiness and correctness of pivot officers may ensure the instant—HALT! WHEEL UP INTO LINE! and ADVANCE! upon the enemy.—And it will seldom happen that changes of position made in order to attack to the greater advantage will be required, but in situations that allow such changes to be made by a flank movement, and without lengthening out the line during the transition from one point to another.

Movements in column if possible to be made by divisions or sub-divisions.

S. 15. *Line of March and Formation.*

Every LEADER of a body, moving on any front whatever, who means to conduct it in a straight line, must march upon *two* points, which he invariably preserves so as to cover each other; if such points are not ascertained for him, he must instantly determine them for himself, and if no strong or marked objects present themselves in his direction, he can never fail, by casting his eyes along the ground, to find such small ones as will answer his purpose, and these from time to time he renews as he approaches them.—To march straight on one object only with certainty and without wavering, is not to be depended on.

Movements in a straight line always made on two objects.

To

The alignement. To march or form in the *alignement*, is to make troops march or form in any part of the straight line which joins two given points, or is prolonged beyond them.

Taking up a line of formation. The *line* on which troops in column move straight, or on which they are successively to form, is taken up to an extent by the prolongation of an original, short, and given *Base* ($o \Delta$), of two persons placed where the troops first begin to enter, or form upon that line, the direction of which has been determined by the views of the commander, and which can seldom fail to point on some distant and distinct object, that will serve to correct the position of the different persons who successively, as their separate bodies require it, prolong the line from the several points already established in it.

Position of markers of the line. When the leading body of a column arrives at any point where it is to enter on a straight line, a person will be placed with his horse's head facing to the pivot flank of the column; each leader will thus know why he is so placed, and will, in passing close to him and to every other person posted in a similar manner, give every attention to continue the alignement.

Position of pivots with respect to markers of the line. When a column is standing or moving, the pivot leaders will always touch the line of the heads of such horses as they find placed facing to them, and marking the direction of the line.—When the divisions wheel up into line, the horses heads of the line, and of the marking persons will then touch, and the dressing of the men will of course be half a horse's length removed from the line of horses heads of the marking persons.—When divisions come up in front successively into line, they come up to the horses heads of the marking persons.

Fig. 1. 2. 3. In general, therefore, the point where a formation or entry into an alignement is to be made, being marked

marked by a fixed person (A), the commander will place a second person (o), 50 or 60 yards on this side of him, exactly in the direction which he determines to give to his new line, which often must be taken up by the eye, as relative to the position of an enemy, and may not point on any remarkable object. These two persons (facing to the front which the troops are to take up) become the *Base* of march or formation, which, by adjutants or others successively aligning themselves backward upon them, and upon each other, is prolonged with accuracy to any required length.

Taking up a line of formation.

Two original or *Base* points (o A) which are to be prolonged, should not be too close together, otherwise the direction of the line must be indistinct, and the farther they are asunder the better can a line be taken upon them.—Where two *Base* points (o A) are to be given, so as to line on a third or distant ascertained point (D), the middle one (A) should be first placed, and the outer one (o) is immediately and easily taken up, by a person who prolongs the line of the middle and distant one. Was the outer one (o) to be first taken, time would be lost, in from thence directing the shifting of the middle one (A), till it is truly lined on the more distant point (D); besides the middle point (A) in many changes of positions of a line or column, is naturally the first ascertained (being the pivot flank of the division on which the change is to be made, or the point of march towards which the column is moving) and from thence the distant point is then taken, which gives the new direction, and depends on the eye and intention of the commander; the easy ascertaining the outer one follows of course.—Or the commander, after ascertaining the middle one (A) will place the outer one (o) at pleasure, and find out a distant one, if any such presents itself in the prolongation of the other two.—At any rate the middle one is the point first to be determined.

Taking up a line of formation from two original given points.
Fig. 1.

Taking up a line of formation.

When

Prolonging
a line by of-
ficers or
non-com-
missioned
officers.
Fig. 2.

When a number of persons (s. s. s. s.) are to be individually, successively, and separately sent out, in order to give a direction on which the pivots of the divisions of a column are to stand, or flanks of divisions, which successively come into line, are to be halted, or on which the dressing of a line is to be corrected, two such persons will be truly and previously placed; and the others, the more exactly to attain a perfect line, instead of attempting at once to dress by each other's breasts, will first cover in *file* with precision, and then carefully face (on the center of their own persons) as directed, before their several divisions move up to them.—Were such persons to endeavour to take up their ground at first, by dressing in a line, the least inclination backward or forward of the body, and their uncertainty of position, would make it a more difficult operation: but in *file*, when each places himself square on the line covering the necks of those before him, the inclination of the body forward or backward, does not affect the direction, and the end proposed is at once attained.

Successive
formation of
divisions in-
to line.
Fig. 4.

In successive forming of divisions into line, as from close column, from echelon, &c. the first division (A. a) that arrives, and is truly formed on it, is considered as the *Base*, which is constantly prolonging for the others (and facing to the horses heads of which two persons are immediately placed as the base objects) the men as they come up endeavour to line well on the part already formed, and each leader corrects on a point taken in the true prolongation, beyond where the flank of his division is to extend; and thus squadron after squadron, and regiment after regiment, arrives in line.

Points of
movement
and forma-
tion ascer-
tained by

Ascertaining the points necessary for the movements and formations of the regiment, is the particular business of the adjutant in the field; in this exercise he may be assisted by detached persons placed behind each

each flank, who are properly trained quickly to take up such line as he shall give them, and for this purpose they are only to be sent out successively, and as their aid is wanted, nor are they to make any bustle or unnecessary parade; and when the operation for which they are sent out is accomplished, they will immediately return behind their proper flank.

The necessity of officers and non-commissioned officers being well trained, to prolong lines, take up distances, and give those aids which are so essential in the formations and movements of all considerable bodies, is evident and much to be attended to.—— Persons active, intelligent, and well mounted, can alone assist the operations of cavalry, nor are camp colours, or any such improper and superfluous modes necessary, or in general to be used.

The necessity of persons well trained to prolong and give line of march and formation.

The markers of the alignement in column, or of the formations in line, are not to quit their ground after the halt of either, till all necessary dressing is accomplished, and that they are directed so to do; they serve not only as points of movement, but as points of correction.

S. 16. *Breaking and forming Squadrons.*

A squadron formed in line with the files at six inches from boot top to boot top, occupies in front nearly as many yards as it has files, or about thirty-four inches for each horse.

Front of the squadron in line.

When the squadron moves from a flank, each rank in *single file* (the rear supernumeraries still on the flank), it then occupies nearly three times the ground it before stood on, supposing sufficient distance from horse to horse for facility of movement.

Extension of the squadron in column.

When the squadron has wheeled and extended into *ranks by two's* (the rear supernumeraries still on the flanks)

flanks) it then occupies nearly two thirds more ground than it before stood on.

When the squadron has wheeled *ranks by three's* to a flank, with an officer in front, another in the rear, the standard and its coverer each in the middle of the two center ranks of sixes, the ranks within about two feet from croup to head; the squadron has thus extended about one sixth more than it before stood on.

When the squadron has wheeled to a flank by *half squadrons*, by *divisions*, or by *sub-divisions* of more than six files, it then occupies less ground than it before stood on, by the front of the column, whatever it is.

Therefore it appears when a line of cavalry, formed with intervals of one third of the squadron, is to march in column of

Extension
of the line,
when in
column.

Ranks by files, that such column is near three times longer than when formed in line.

Ranks by two's, that such column is more than one third longer than the line.

Ranks by three's, that such column causes no extension of the line, though it does of each squadron into its interval, and that there is still a distance to be preserved from squadron to squadron.

Divisions of any kind above six files in front, that such column causes no extension, and that there are intervals between squadrons and divisions, in proportion to the then front of the column.

Leaders of
divisions of
the squad-
ron.

Leaders of
divisions of
the squad-
ron in co-
lumn.

Whenever the SQUADRON is broken into divisions, or parts, for the purpose of movement, each separate body has a *leader*, on whom the eye and attention of each soldier is fixed.—In *column*, such leader will be on the pivot flank of his division in all situations of manœuvre. These leaders cover each other in the given direction in which the column is to move; they are not themselves then to be covered by any one, and

and are answerable for true distances.—Should any such leader not be appointed, or be wanting to a division, his place is to remain vacant, and not to be occupied by the flank files of men, for such flank files of men are invariably to remain covering each other.

When from the halt, the squadron, by wheels to its flank, *breaks into open column*, the commanding officer gives the words (HALF SQUADRONS, DIVISIONS, SUBDIVISIONS) TO THE $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\}$ WHEEL! MARCH! Commands given when the squadron breaks to a flank by any of its tellings off.

HALT! DRESS! by the standing flank, and then EYES $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\}$ by the pivot flank, after which the whole is put in motion by the word, MARCH!—Should the word EYES (right or left) be omitted, at any rate they are directed to the pivot flank, at the word, MARCH!

When the squadron has wheeled to a flank by *half squadrons*—*If to the right*, the officer from the right of the squadron immediately shifts to the left of his half squadron, to conduct the pivot of the leading half squadron, and the officer who was on the left of the squadron wheels up, and remains on the pivot of his own half squadron.—*If to the left*, then the left officer shifts to the right of his half squadron, and the right officer wheels up, and remains on the right of his own half squadron. Pivot leaders in column of half squadrons.

When the squadron has wheeled to a flank by *divisions*.—*If to the right*, then the left officer is on the pivot of the rear division, and the right officer shifts to the pivot of the front division; and the serjeants on the right of the two center divisions shift each to the left of his own division.—*If to the left*, then the right officer wheels up, and is on the pivot flank of the rear division; the serjeants on the right of the two center divisions also wheel up, and the left Pivot leaders in column of divisions.

flank officer shifts to the pivot of the leading division of the squadron.

Columns of sub-divisions. When the squadron has wheeled to a flank by *sub-divisions*, then the two flank officers, and their coverers, and the two center serjeants, and their coverers, will each be on the pivot flank of a subdivision.

Standard in column. In the wheelings of the squadron into *half squadrons*, *divisions*, or *sub-divisions*, the standard and its coverer wheel up with the leading half-squadron, or the second division, or the fourth sub-division from the flank wheeled to, so as to place themselves, at the conclusion of the wheel, behind the second and third file from the pivot of each of the said bodies.—And when these bodies wheel up to form squadron, the standard shifts briskly to its place in the center, during the wheel.

Commands given when the squadron wheels to a flank, ranks by three's or by two's. When from the halt the squadron wheels to its flank *ranks by three's* or *by two's*, the commanding officer gives the words (RANKS BY THREE'S, OR BY TWO'S)

TO THE $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\}$ WHEEL! MARCH! HALT! DRESS!

to the pivot hand, after which the whole is put in motion at the second word, March! the whole three's at the same instant, and increasing their distances while on the move: or the two's (who are standing at a half wheel) successively as soon as each is enabled so to do, and can get its marching distance.

Column of ranks by three's. When the squadron wheels to the right or left, by *ranks by three's*, the middle man of each three will turn on his horse's fore feet, and of the other two, one will rein back, and the other moves forward to dress with him—A flank officer is at the head of the squadron, the other flank officer at the rear.—The standard is in the middle of the leading center rank of sixes when wheeled up, and its coverer is in the middle of the rank behind it.—The supernumeraries of the rear rank will, if the ground requires it, fall in and follow the rear of the squadron, or otherwise turn singly,

singly, and march on its flank.—In this situation in movement, the squadron has opened out one sixth more than the ground it stood formed on.

When the squadron wheels to a flank, by *ranks* Column of ranks by two's. *by two's*, the flank man of each two will half turn on his horse's fore feet, and the other man will half wheel up, so as to make a half face to the flank, and be in a situation to move off successively as it comes to their turn. A flank officer is at the head of the squadron, the other flank officer in the rear of it.—The standard and its coverer turn each on his own ground, and move between the ranks: the serrefiles of the rear will, if the ground requires it, fall in and follow the rear of the squadron, or otherwise turn singly, and march on its flank. In this situation in movement, the squadron has opened out near two thirds more than the ground it stood formed on.

In the *flank movements* of ranks by three's, or by *two's*, the files are as close up as they well can, without crowding: the whole dress to the pivot hand, and the pivot men of the ranks are answerable for the covering and keeping up to those that precede them: and to this the officers and serrefiles, who are disengaged from the ranks, must be attentive. Attentions in ranks by three's and by two's.

When, for the purpose of *manœuvre*, the squadron *Serrefiles in column.* breaks to the flank by half squadrons or divisions, the serrefiles are close up behind each: when by sub-divisions, they are on the flank, not the pivot one.

During all division wheelings on a *fixed flank*, the eyes of the men are directed to the wheeling hand.—At the word *Halt! Dress!* they are immediately turned to the standing hand, and are from thence corrected.—The square wheel of the quarter circle is so essentially necessary to correct movements in columns and formations in line, that every help should be applied to ensure its justness, and points should be thrown out exactly to ascertain it. Dressing in division wheels.

Halt of divisions. *Halts* of divisions, from wheels, are made with eyes turned to the standing flank.

Post of commanding officers. Commanding officers of regiments and squadrons remain on (but wide of) the pivot flanks, to observe and regulate the march, and instantaneously to form when ordered.

Shifting of officers to pivot flanks. Commanding officers must take care that conducting officers of flanks or pivots shift nimbly to such points, at the proper instant they should there place themselves.

Formation of the squadron and line from column of divisions. If a line has marched to a flank in *column of squadrons, half squadrons, divisions, or sub-divisions*, in such cases it occupies (intervals being preserved) exactly the ground requisite for its formation in line; which is at any instant made by halting, and wheeling up the quarter circle.

Formation of squadron and line from column of ranks by three's. If a line is moving to a flank, squadrons by *ranks by three's*. As each squadron in march then occupies more ground than what it stands on when formed, and that about half the intervals still ought to remain, therefore if the whole halts at the same instant, and *each* squadron wheels up its three's, closing them at the same time to its leading flank, the line should then be completely formed with its proper interval.—The squadrons thus forming all at the same time.

Formation of squadron and line from column of ranks by two's. If a line is marching correctly to the flank *ranks by two's*, every man as close as he well can to his preceding file leader, no distance between squadrons, that it halts, and that the pivot men are covered, such line will still have lengthened out considerably, viz. one third at least.—Therefore, if it forms to the pivot flank, the four leading men of the head squadron wheel up to the flank by two's; the line is put in motion, the other men of the leading squadron successively wheel up when they close to their respective leaders; each other squadron, as its head arrives at its

its interval distance from the preceding one, halts and forms in the same manner.—The squadrons thus form successively as they gain their distances.

When from the halt, and from open column, the squadron is formed by the *wheeling up of its divisions*. The commanding officer gives the words (half-squadrons, divisions, sub-divisions, ranks by three's) **WHEEL INTO LINE!** on which pivot leaders immediately place themselves on the reverse flank of such division, as by its wheel up brings them to their true place in the squadron; the pivot officer of the rear division is alone an exception, being already at his post in squadron. At the word **MARCH!** the whole wheel up, and receive the word **HALT! DRESS!** by the standing flank, and the line of pivots; the standard, serrefiles, and every thing having resumed their place in squadron.—Squadrons forming from ranks by *two's*, receive successively from their leaders, as their heads come to their ground, the words, **WHEEL INTO SQUADRON! HALT! DRESS!** to the hand formed to.

When the column of — wheels up into squadron or line.

In wheeling from column into line, it is on the *flank files of men*, and not on the pivot leaders, that the wheels are made; therefore, on the word being given to **WHEEL INTO LINE!** those leaders quit the flanks, and are disposed of as above, and this allows that after the wheel the horses heads of the pivot men exactly touch the heads of those that are facing towards and marking the general line.

Wheels from column into line, made on pivot files of men.

When the open column of squadrons stands halted, ready to *wheel up into line*—on the caution so to do, and before the word **MARCH!** an officer or under officer from the wheeling flank (or from the rear) of each squadron, moves quickly forward, and places himself in the line of pivots, and thereby becomes an object, which determines the square of the wheel, and which the outward man of each squadron knows he is not to pass.—In an open column of half squadrons, the leading half only of each squadron will send out

Aids necessary to be given when the column wheels up into line.

such an object, as the rear half (if distances are just) wheels up to the pivot of the leading half.—In an open column of divisions, or sub-divisions, the leading one of each will only send out such object.—In column of ranks by three's, or by two's, commanding officers of regiments will always endeavour by detached persons, to prolong the line as taken from the head of the column, in order to make their respective formations correct in the general line.—The rear division of a column, before it wheels up into line, will always place an object of formation behind its pivot flank, and such object is the one on which the flank squadron is corrected after the wheel into line.

S. 17. *Open Column.*

Formation
of columns.

All Columns are supposed formed from line, for the convenience of movement, and for the purpose of again extending into line.—Every column of march or manœuvre must be formed by a regular succession of the divisions from one flank to the other of the line, or of such of its parts as compose the column, for whatever is the relative position of a body in line, such ought it to be in column; and where several connected columns are formed, the same flanks of each should be in front; but whether rights or lefts will depend on circumstances.—Columns formed from the center of regiments or lines will seldom be made, are partial, and not adapted as the others are to movements, and formations in all situations.

Columns of
march and
manœuvre.

The column is named that of *march*, or *route*, when applied to common marches, where the attention of men and officers is not so much kept on the stretch.—It is named the *column of manœuvre*, when being within reach of an enemy, the greatest exactness is required, in order to its speedy formation at any instant into line during its transition from one position to another.

Columns

Columns of march or manœuvre will generally be composed of divisions, sub-divisions, or ranks by three's—for the purposes of movement they need not exceed twelve file in front, nor should they be under six men in front, otherwise there will not be space to loosen the ranks, and the line will be of course lengthened out, as happens in the march of ranks by two's or by files.—From six to ten men in front they are most advantageously composed for quick manœuvres.

Front and extent of columns.

Column of march or manœuvre will be formed with the left in front, whenever it is probable that the formation of the line will be required to the right flank, and *vice versa* when required to the left flank.

Circum-stance that determines the leading flank of columns.

The proper *pivot flank* in column, is that which, when wheeled up to, preserves the divisions of the line in the natural order, and to their proper front; the other may be called the *reverse flank*.—In column, divisions cover and dress to the proper pivot flank; to the left when the right is in front, and to the right when the left is in front.

Pivot flank and reverse flank of divisions, &c. in column.

In column, the chief commander is with the leading division; and in line with the directing squadron.

In all movements, formations, and changes of position of the column, *distances and dressing* are taken from the directing hand, viz. from the head of the column, or from the hand to which the formation is making, or to be made.

Distances and dressing where taken from.

In movements in column, the *pivot officers*, or non-commissioned officers, are answerable for covering, and for proper wheeling distances, and the eyes of the whole are turned to the pivot; such pivot leaders must attend to those two circumstances only, and by no means be looking to or giving directions to their divisions; that care must be left to the officers on the other flank, or in the rear; for if they themselves move steadily and truly, there is little doubt but their divisions will always keep up to them.

Pivot officers.

Officers that lead squadrons in line, guide pivots in column, in pivot offi-

Attentions column, in pivot offi-

cers, and
leaders of
separate
bodies,

column, or conduct the flanks of divisions successively into line, in changes of position, and indeed all officers who in their own persons determine the movement of any body, must recollect, that unless they themselves are steady, correct, and smooth in the path which they give, their several bodies cannot follow in firm or proper order, but will partake of every irregularity of such leader, who therefore must attend to his objects of distance, and leading, and bestow only an occasional glance of his eye on the dressing of the division he leads.

Attentions
of the rear
divisions of
the column
when in
march.

The rear divisions of a column in march always follow every turn and twist which the head makes; each successively changing its direction at whatever point the leading one may have so done.—When at any unexpected moment a column is ordered to halt, the pivot leaders of each division must remain fixed where they are found, at the word HALT!—If the march of the column is again to be resumed, the rear divisions will continue to follow the exact path traced out by the head; nor are any of the following divisions of a column ever to deviate from this rule, or endeavour of themselves to get into a straight line, when the general direction is a winding one, until an express order is given for that purpose, which can hardly ever happen, till the head of the column is halted, with a determination to form the line in a straight direction, in which case, the correction of pivots will begin from the head of the column.

March of
the column
through a
wood, or in
embarrass-
ed ground.

The march in column through a thin wood, or in ground where impediments frequently change the direction of its head, will be best made by a front of sub-divisions or ranks by three's.—The pivot files will preserve exact distances from each other, choose their own ground, and wind as the trees or other impediments permit, along a general direction. In such situation, at no time, if it is possible, should any of
the

the pivot flank leaders be obliged to double or quit the continued line of march; but the other files may be (when impediments are to be passed) much opened or loosened from those pivots, who in the mean time moving free, and preserving wheeling distances, are in a situation at every instant to *halt* and *form* in line, the others closing in to them.

Should the march in a straight alignment be at any time *interrupted* by pools of water, or any other obstacle which is impassable, the march will be continued straight to that obstacle, the obstacle will be marched round (and always if possible, by deviating to the reverse flank, so as to remain behind the line) and the same straight line will again on the other side be taken up by the pivots, at the point in it which a detached person has prepared.—Allowance will be made when the line is to form, for the breadth of such obstacle, by the doubling of as many divisions as will fill up the vacancy (when it can be done) which is thereby occasioned in the line; nor must any small interruptions in the line, that can possibly be surmounted, ever make the pivots deviate from the straight line, when the intention of forming on the line is evident, and known to all.

Obstacles in the march of a column in the alignment.

In column, the commander of a regiment remains near its leading division, and the adjutant, (or some appointed person) remains near its closing division; they are thus ready to preserve the line of march, and at the instant of halting, to make such correction of pivots as may be necessary; for which purpose the adjutant takes care immediately to place himself in the prolongation of the general line, which he takes up from the points in his front already established in it, and from such bodies as before him have already halted in it.—In this manner the adjutant in his own person gives the flank point on which each

Commander and adjutant of a regiment correct pivots.

each commander from his leading division at all times forms and dresses his squadron and regiment.

Aids given to the march or halt of the column.

If the commander of a column should not himself be at the head of the column when it changes direction, or halts to form, the then leader of the column must immediately ascertain the degree of change of direction, or correct the pivots, according to the obvious intention of the commander.—In correcting the pivots, or when an ascertained line has not been given, then such a one will be instantly taken up as corresponding with the evident design of the movement, may occasion the least shifting of the flanks, and the easiest to be acquired.

Helps given to the straight march of the column.

During the march of a column in a straight alignment, the commanding officers and adjutants of regiments should occasionally themselves *halt* in the true line, facing to the column, and by remaining till their pivot leaders successively pass them, they will thus oblige them to correct their line if needful.

The front of column not to be altered when marching in an alignment.

No doubling up, increasing, or diminishing the front of the column, must be made after entering on a straight alignment in order to form in line.—Such operation when necessary, should be performed before the line of formation is entered on.

Short-sighted officers cannot conduct the leading divisions of a column.

Officers who have an indistinct sight must never lead the head divisions of a column marching in a straight alignment, and must therefore be replaced on such occasions by others, whose more accurate vision enables them to preserve and prolong the just line, which the whole are to follow.

Correction of pivots of open column, before wheeling into line.

When the open column has marched on in an alignment, and is ordered to halt and form line, the pivots of the leading regiment are immediately corrected if necessary, the others instantly perfect their line upon it, and upon each other, and no time is lost in wheeling up into line, and then advancing.

When

When a regiment is to correct its pivots in column, Correction of pivots, by the commanding officer.
 the commanding officer immediately places himself in the true line of formation (which he does from the objects that he knows and sees are in it) at the pivot flank of his leading division; his adjutant, or some other named person, does the same near the pivot flank of the last division of the regiment.—These two persons being thus themselves in the true line; the commanding officer quickly corrects his other pivots from the front to the rear of his regiment, which is thus truly placed, and ready to wheel into line.—The correction of squadrons, when necessary, is individually made by each leader in the same manner.

When the pivots, or formation of a leading regiment of a column are once perfected, Correction of pivots, by regiments, before wheeling into line.
 other distant regiments may from thence, by their adjutants prolonging such line, take up or correct theirs, although there should be intermediate regiments, who are then very improperly placed.

If the regiment, after wheeling up from column into line, is not critically well dressed, Correction of the squadron, and of the line, after wheeling up from column.
 the fault must be in the internal part of the divisions: this must be immediately corrected by each squadron leader on his former pivot men, who on no account must have moved, but remain so many fixed points, on whom the whole are lined. If any farther dressing is necessary, it is ordered and made by a field officer, who himself moves quickly close along the front from the flank to which eyes are turned to the other flank.

In changes of position made by flank movements of divisions of the open column, and where the line is to be formed by the wheeling up of those divisions, When squadrons successively wheel up by divisions on coming into line.
 in general the whole of a regiment will be halted on its ground, stand in column, and its pivots be adjusted before it wheels up and forms; but frequently, and when judged necessary, the parts of it that arrive in the line may form successively as they come up; that is, when the divisions of two squadrons are standing in

in column on the line, and their pivots adjusted, the leading one may be ordered to wheel up, and the second one remain, till the third one is in like manner placed on the line, it then wheels up, and thus there is always one squadron standing in column on the line, as a direction (together with the formed part of the line, and the several persons who prolong it) for the continuation of the general formation to any extent.

Necessary
extent of a
column of
march.

A column in movement, should, if possible, never occupy more ground than what it stands on in line: but when the formation into line must undoubtedly be to the front, then the divisions may be ordered to march closed up to half, quarter, or any other distance, and the formation may be made by prolonging the line, by deployment, by inclining up, or by half wheels, and marching on the oblique lines, as circumstances require.

Change of
direction in
column.

An open column of squadrons, or half squadrons, will generally, from their extent of front, change the direction of their march by squared and quick wheels made on a flank: but the column of divisions, subdivisions, ranks by three's, or by two's, when obliged frequently to change its direction of march, may do it advantageously by the gradual and circling movement of the leading *pivot*, to which all others, as it comes to their turn successively, conform, taking care that at no instant whatever the ordered distances are changed or lost, and that eyes remain turned to such pivots.—Columns marching at half or quarter distance of their then front must also make their necessary wheels on a *moveable* pivot, otherwise a stop must ensue, and the column open out.

Quickness
of wheels
in column.

In all wheels of a column, in movement to change direction, and made by divisions on a *fixed* flank, the outward file, whether officer or man, is the one wheel-
ed

ed upon; and the quickness of the wheels must be at least double to the rate of march, otherwise the column may be liable to open out, and the wheeling point would not be cleared in time for each successive division.—In changes made on a *moveable* flank, the outward file of that flank is also the directing one.

Halts of divisions from wheels are made with eyes turned to the standing flank——But all *Halts* from a march in front are made with the eyes turned to the point or points to which the troops while in march are looking.—After which, no dressing or movement whatever is to be made, until a separate order directs it.

Halting from the wheel, or from the march.

The whole column or line should always be in so correct a situation, as to halt instantly on the word HALT!——But should, at any time, the difficulties of ground have unavoidably opened out the column, or thrown squadrons out of the line, in such case the halt of those squadrons will be successive, as they regain their proper situations.

The halt of the line or column.

Wheelings into line, or into column, will be made successively (but instantaneously) from regiment to regiment; and commanding officers of regiments, although they may not in a long line hear words of command, will by the eye follow such movements when the intention is so clear and obvious.—The instant repetition of the word MARCH! by the leaders of squadrons, is what alone can ensure precision on these occasions.

Wheelings into line or column, by regiments.

When squadrons, half squadrons, or divisions separately move by a flank, to change position in column, or from line to place themselves in open or close column, or from close column to deploy into line, &c. it will always, when possible, be done by *ranks by three's*, and the greatest care be given, that the three's move as close as they can, that at the instant the word HALT! FRONT! is given to each, the division

Deployments, &c. made ranks by three's.

may be exactly formed by the wheeling of its three's, without any necessity for a closing in of its rear.

General
rule of
moving,
forming,
dressing
bodies that
successively
march up,
and arrive
in line.

Whenever divisions or distinct bodies move in front, and arrive successively in line; the eyes of the whole are turned to the hand to which they are to form, and from which they preserve required distances.—The leading officer must be on the inward flank of his division; he conducts it to its point of junction in line, and from thence dresses and corrects it on the person who is previously placed beyond him, and prolonging the general line. The outward flank of the last formed and halted body is always considered as the point of junction (necessary intervals included) of the succeeding one—Thus, the looking and lining of the soldier is always towards that point, and the flank of the line formed to; and the correction of dressing by the officer is always made from that point towards the other flank.—Therefore on all occasions of moving up, forming and dressing in line, by the men's lining themselves to one hand (inwards) and the officers correcting to the other (outwards) the most perfect line may be obtained: this great principle is to be observed from the smallest body to the most considerable corps, and regulates formations of the squadron, regiment, and the line.

Attentions
of com-
manding
officers in
formations
of the line.

In all formations of a considerable line, commanding officers of regiments must take every advantage from timeously throwing out intelligent persons to give them true points in the general line; they will thereby avoid participating of the errors that others may have committed, in being behind or overshooting the line; for nothing is more false than to make a general rule of always coming up to the squadron before one, without considering whether such squadron is or is not truly halted and formed; it is therefore to the general line that every one must endeavour to conform, and not to the false one that may be given by single squadrons or regiments.

The

The commanding officers of regiments are in the Post of command charge at the head of one of their squadrons, generally of the one nearest that of direction.—In all other situations of manœuvre they are moveable according to circumstances, in general near the head of their column, or of their body, which first forms in line; when the line is formed in parade, they are at the head of the right squadron. officers of regiments.

S. 18. *March in Line.*

The march of the line in front is the most difficult, and the most material of all movements; it is requisite near the enemy, and immediately precedes the attack—In proportion to the extent of front and rapidity required does that difficulty increase; therefore too much exactness and minuteness in the execution of it cannot be observed. March in line.

When marching in line, each squadron dresses to its own center, which center follows its own leader, the several leaders line with, and preserve distances from each other, and from the regulating squadron; this alone has its objects of march, the others being all subordinate to, and conforming to its motions. General attention.

When parts of a line marching in front are interrupted by any obstacle, they must halt, and by flank movements of their divisions or sub-divisions, double behind (into close column) such adjoining parts as are not so interrupted, and avoid pressing upon them. Passing obstacles.
 —In proportion as they pass such obstacles, and that the ground permits them to come up into line, they will in the same manner, by flank movements move up into their proper places, where a void space has been preserved for them. If only small portions of a line are interrupted, and for a short space, they may follow in file, or rather in ranks by three's or two's, In column.
By files, or ranks by three's or two's.

two's, behind the flanks of the uninterrupted parts, and move up to their places in file (or by three's or two's) when it can be done.

Halt of the line. *When the line halts*, each squadron halts and dresses by its own center; and if the dressing of the general line is to be afterwards corrected, it ought to begin at, and be taken from the regulating squadron.

Successive halt of squadrons. *The line should always be in so correct a situation, as to halt instantly on the word *Halt!*—but if at any time the difficulties of ground have unavoidably thrown squadrons out of the line, in such case, the halt of those squadrons will be successive, as they regain their proper situations.*

Distances. *The distances of squadrons in line are always taken from standard to standard.*

Standards. *The standards must be always carried uniformly and upright, in order to facilitate the moving and dressing of the line.*

Dressing the line after halting. *After the march and halt in line of each squadron by its own center, if a more exact dressing is required, then two persons are placed with their horses' heads before the flank files of the regulating squadron, which is previously dressed in the true direction: each other squadron, from each flank, advances (directly forward) a person to prolong that line; all eyes are directed to the regulating squadron; the whole (by squadrons, either together or successively, and quickly as ordered) move up and halt in the given line.—A straight line is in this manner obtained; but if the intervals are false, they must remain so till corrected by order, and by a separate operation of flank marching.*

Flank squadron. *A flank squadron of a line need never remain an instant with a false interval, or ill dressed, as its corrections do not interfere with any other part of the line.*

Closing files in line. *When it is necessary for any squadron, on account of inaccurate and loose formation, to close its files or parts*

parts by passing, it should be done to such file of the squadron as will best tend to establish the just interval it ought to keep from the directing hand: this will depend on the quick eye and decision of the commanding officers of squadrons, who will hold it in view on such occasion.

All correction of the dressing of a line, after forming or halting, is made from the point by which the movement, formation, or halt was made; should that point be obliged to shift, then the line formed must be an accidental one. When the line halts after moving in front, such point is the center of the regulating squadron. When from column, the line is formed by wheeling up, such point is the flank, which was the leading pivot of the column. When the line is formed by the successive marching up of divisions in front, as in change of position on a given division, such point is the outward flank of the given division.—In general, when corrections of a line are to be made, the commander places two or three persons in the intended line which is instantly prolonged by others, and the regiments conform accordingly.

The dressing of a line corrected on fixed and determined points.

In the correction of the partial parts of a line, the reining back, or throwing back such parts, cannot always be avoided; but where the whole line is to be new dressed, and that circumstances admit, much facility attends the operation, if such a direction is taken as causes a dressing forward, however small, of every squadron that composes it.

Dressing the line forward.

GENERAL CIRCUMSTANCES THAT REGULATE THE CHANGES OF POSITION, AND FORMATIONS OF THE REGIMENT AND LINE.

S. 19. *Changes of position of the regiment or line* from one distant situation to another are made, in *line*, or by the *Echellon* (diagonal) march of divisions in front, or by the movements of the column, especially of the *open column*.

By the movements of the open column.

Changes of position in open column, are in general movements of previous disposition, made from one distant situation to another, not liable to the interruption of an enemy. Original or new positions, where circumstances allow, are in this manner easiest and soonest taken, especially in the prolongation or movement of a line to its flank.

Changes of position of the regiment or line already formed, when made in one or more open columns, may be divided into four parts.

1. The regiment or line wheels the quarter circle to the ordered hand by *divisions*, so as to be ready to move off in one or more columns.

2. A single regiment, by the flank march of *each* of its divisions by three's, moves to arrive in the new line. The leading regiment of a line does the same, but the second, third, and every other regiment of a *line* move off separate in regimental columns of divisions, till they arrive at the new position, and it is there that their divisions separately and successively enter that position.

3. The divisions again form in a general open column, perpendicular to the new direction.

4. When

4. When the divisions of each regiment are thus arrived, halted, and adjusted, the line is formed by their wheeling up, squadron after squadron, regiment after regiment, or the whole together as ordered.

The Echellon (or diagonal) changes of position are the safest that can be employed in the presence of, and near to an enemy; they are almost equal in security to the march of the line in front, or to an uniform wheel of the line, but which is very difficult to execute; they can be used in the most critical situations where the filings and movements of the open column could not be risked: they are more particularly used, when the enemy's flank can be taken by throwing the body forward, or when one's own is to be covered by throwing it backward. The advantages attending them are, the preserving a general front during the march, and allowing sufficient freedom of movement, which in such a situation is indispensable; they enable to change position on any division of the line, either on a fixed or moving point, and at any instant the movement can be stopt, a line formed, and a sudden attack repulsed.—The Echellon changes require the ground to be nearly of such a nature as a full line could advance in; and any of its divisions that meet with obstacles in their march will pass them in the same manner as they do in line, by doubling divisions, or following ranks by three's, and without interrupting the progress of the others.

By the
Echellon or
diagonal
movements.

Changes of position of the regi-

1. Divisions (generally half squadrons) of the regiment or line, wheel forward an eighth, quarter, or half wheel, as ordered towards the hand to which they are to change position, and so as that each thereby stands perpendicular

*ment or line made
by the Echelon
march of divisions
consist of three
parts.*

dicular to the line drawn from its inward flank to the point that flank is to rest at in the new line.

2. Each division marches on directly in front, by its inward flank to its proper point in the new line.

3. Each division successively on its inward flank arriving at the division preceding it (which is already halted in the line) dresses up, and forms truly in that line.

Each change of position of the regiment or line may be considered as a general wheel of the whole, made on a point, either *in, before, or behind* the old line.—The regiment or line therefore breaks to which ever hand, and to which ever division it is to manœuvre to, or be led by: when to a flank, generally to that which is nearest to, and is first to enter any part of the new position: when a central division determines its movement, it breaks (to right and left) inwards, and faces such division, which makes its change of situation on its own ground.—When this *point* is in the old line, it must necessarily be within the regiment when single, or within a certain named regiment of a line, such regiment will therefore have to perform the change on a *fixed* point within itself, viz. on such division flank or central as is already rested at that point, and by making its other divisions, either by *flank* or *diagonal* marching, enter into the line; but all the other regiments will have the double operation of moving up to the new line, and then bringing their divisions upon it. When this point is *before* or *behind* the old line, every regiment whatever, single or connected, will have this double operation to perform.

S. 20. *Changes of Position of a Regiment.*

The regiment formed in line changes to a new position, either on a fixed point, within itself, or on a distant point, which marks one of its future flanks, or where one of its central divisions is to be placed.

Fig. 3.

When on a fixed point, either flank or central.

1. By the diagonal march of divisions either to front or rear, which move on and line with the placed or fixed one, when it halts on its ground. (S. 70. 71.)

Fig. 5.

2. By breaking into open column so as to face the fixed point. The divisions then march by their flank to front or rear into the new direction, and wheel up into line, when the column is prepared. (S. 36. 37.)

Fig. 6. A.

When on a distant point, and that the whole line is moveable.

1. By the Echellon wheel of divisions, and the subsequent march of the whole, till the one nearest to the new line arrives in it, and that the others move on and form to it. (S. 70. 71.)

Fig. 6. B.

2. By the breaking into open column to the one or other flank, and the immediate flank march by *three's* of all the divisions from the old line to the new one. (S. 40.)

Fig. 6. C.

3. By the march of the regimental column to the point where its *head* is to rest, and then by the flank marching of its divisions into line. (S. 37. 41.)

4. By

Fig. 6. F.

4. By the march of the regimental column to the point where its *rear* is to rest, and the successive wheeling of its divisions into, and prolonging the line. (S. 42.)

Fig. 6. H.

5. By the march of the regimental column, and its wheeling into the new line, at the point where one of its *central* divisions is to rest. (S. 43.)

Besides the before, which are the most general modes by which changes of position should be effected by the regiment, the open column, on arriving at its ground, may also be required to form in line in the following manner.

Fig. 7. 8.
A. B. C.

6. When the column, having arrived perpendicularly or obliquely behind the line at the point where its *head* is to rest, is there halted, the leading division may be placed on the line, and each other division be ordered to make such a degree of wheel backward, as will enable it to march on in front, perpendicular to its proper point in the new line, where each successively arrives and forms. This is a movement in column and a formation, by the diagonal march. (S. 44.)

Fig. 6. D. 9.

7. The column arriving in the direction of the line, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the new line, and at the point where its *head* is to rest, but which its *rear* is to pass, may form by the wheel of the leading division into the new line, and the successive march of the other divisions behind it, and behind each other, till they arrive at their several points of wheeling up. (S. 50.)

Fig. 6. E.

8. The column marching perpendicularly (or nearly so) towards the point where its *head* is to rest, and being at a considerable distance from such point, the leading

leading division proceeds at a slow pace only, the others oblique from the column, successively move up to the leading division, and the front being thus gradually increased, the whole regiment arrives at the same time on the line of formation.

The column arriving behind any part of its ground, may also move up to close column, and form in line by its deployments on the front, the rear, or on a central division.

S. 21. *A Regiment broken into, and marching in open column*, must arrive at, and enter on the ground on which it is to form in line, either—in the DIRECTION of that line—PERPENDICULAR to that line—or in a direction more or less OBLIQUE, and betwixt the other two.

Fig. 9. A.

If the column is marching in the direction of the line, it will either enter where its head is to rest or where its rear is to rest.

Fig. 10.

If the column enters perpendicular or oblique to the new line, it will either enter where its head is to rest, where its rear is to rest, or at some intermediate point, where a central division is to rest.

If where its *head* is to rest—the leading division will wheel up into line, and the others march on behind it, and successively wheel up, as in (S. 50.)

If where its *rear* is to rest—it marches with its pivot flank, and at just distances along the line, till the rear division is at its point, the whole then halt and wheel up into line, as in (S. 42.)

If where its *head* is to rest—the formation may be made as in (S. 41.) Fig. 11.

If where its *rear* is to rest—the formation may be made, as in (S. 42.) Fig. 10.

If at an intermediate point, where a central division is to rest—the formation may be made, as in (S. 43.) Fig. 12.

S. 32.

Relative situation of old and new positions. S. 32. *All new positions that a regiment or line can take with respect to the old one are—PARALLEL, or nearly so, to the old—INTERSECTING, by themselves or their prolongation, some part of the old line or its prolongation.*

Parallel. *New parallel positions being necessarily to the front or rear of the old one, the regiment will, according to circumstances, take them up by the diagonal march, the flank march of divisions after wheeling into column; or the movement in open column to the new line, and its subsequent formation in it.*

Intersecting. *New intersecting positions, which themselves cut the regiment, will be taken up by the diagonal march; or the flank march ranks by three's of divisions.—All other new positions, which themselves or their prolongation, intersect the old line, or its prolongation, will in general be taken up by the march in open column, and its subsequent formations when it arrives at the line: some such positions will, however, allow of and require being made by the Echellon march, or by the flank march of divisions.—In general, the regiment will break to the hand which is nearest to the new position, be conducted to its nearest point in the new line, and form on it as directed.*

It is much to be remembered, that in changes of position in open or in Echellon column; it is only *one* squadron of one regiment, whether such regiment is single or part of a line, whose movements can be central. Every other squadron whatever, and every other regiment (except one in a line in central movements) manœuvre from a leading flank.

General rule in breaking into open column.

S. 23. *In changes of position by the open column.—The whole regiment (as a general rule) is directed to wheel the whole quarter circle into open column, although it may often seem an unnecessary operation, and that disengaging the heads of divisions would*
 answer

answer the same purpose, where the change is to be performed by their *flank* marching.—Yet is this to be observed as the general mode, because it is a positive and defined situation, from which every change can proceed; whereas all other modes are liable to uncertainty and mistake; and the apparent going over a little unnecessary ground, is a matter of no moment in point of time, and begets precision and correctness of execution.

This rule, which takes place for all the following divisions of a column, will, in some situations, be dispensed with as to a leading division, which often would have to wheel up again over the same ground, when the column is put in motion towards its new position.—A previous and separate CAUTION from the chief of the regiment, may therefore, when it is seen necessary, prevent this extra movement to the leading division, and give it a more favourable situation in the direction in which it is to proceed.

In central changes of position, within a regiment or line, and which are made by the movements of the open column, the regiment or line will in general break inwards into two open columns facing each other and the given point, so that one has its right in front, and the other its left.—From this situation, by the flank march of divisions, or by the march in columns, its component parts move to their new position, and the central divisions which face each other, having there taken a double wheeling distance, the divisions wheel up into line.—The advantages of making central changes, by breaking *inwards*, so as the whole stand faced to the given division or divisions in two columns, are—that the universal rule of all bodies breaking, dressing, forming to whatever point they are led by, or manœuvred to, is observed.—That the taking of distances in the new general column are all from *before* and none from *behind*, which

Central changes—
modes of
breaking
into column.

last is a matter of difficulty and delay.—That the parts of the line on each side of the central division or divisions work exactly in the same manner, and form in line by one and the same method. That the breaking inwards of the line (or the counter-march of such part of an open column, as is before a given division, which counter-march of each division is the affair of a moment) gives these advantages.

In central changes, was the whole of a regiment or line to break to one hand, or part of a column not to counter-march—then whatever divisions of the central regiment were arranged before the named one would, by flank marching, place themselves again in column in the new line, taking their distances from *behind*—Such entire regiments as were before the named division would march in separate columns of divisions, each from its head or outward flank, and enter into the new line, at the point where its *rear* or inward flank was to be placed, it must then in column prolong the line, and be halted the instant the rear arrived at the point where the head entered.—Although regiments and lines should be prepared to change position in this manner, if so required, yet the central method is to be considered as the more general one, and practised accordingly.

Calculation
of distances.

Field officers and adjutants must always recollect the number of yards which the front of a regiment, or any of its component parts occupy, and be enabled by the eye, as well as the pace of their horses, quickly and nearly to ascertain and give such distances.—Every squadron leader must quickly judge the extent of his squadron; and every division leader and marker of a pivot flank, the front of the division which he regulates—practice and attention soon give accuracy in these points, which are an essential part of regimental instruction.—It has been already mentioned, that one yard nearly is to be allowed for each horse

horse and man, and therefore the front of a body is as many yards as files.

The flank march rank by three's of the squadron, ^{Ranks by three's.} half squadron, or division, is so much employed, and so essential in the movements and changes of situation of the squadron, regiment, or the line, that it is to be principally attended to in their instruction, and much practised by the distinct bodies.—In that shape they are little or nothing extended, which is the most important of all circumstances, and the several ranks are as close up as they can, without interfering or crowding.—They should be conducted briskly in all kind of varying directions; and at any moment when the word **HALT** is given, be found in a situation instantly to **WHEEL** up by three's, and form.

right <i>Three's—Wheel!</i> left <i>March!</i> <i>Halt! Dress!</i>	{	When a division wheels to a flank rank by three's it receives the words <i>Division</i> (right or left) <i>Wheel! March!</i> on which man; and then <i>Halt! Dress!</i> to the pivot hand.
--	---	--

<i>March!</i>	{	At the second word <i>March!</i> it moves off, and is conducted in any ordered direction, and at any pace.
---------------	---	--

<i>Halt!</i> <i>Three's wheel up!</i> <i>March!</i> <i>Halt! Dress!</i>	{	When its head arrives at the point of forming, it receives the words, <i>Halt! Three's wheel up! March! Halt! Dress!</i> to the pivot hand in column; and is then ready to march forward, or to wheel into line, if it is a division of a column.
--	---	---

General ob-
servation.

The words of command given by leaders of squadrons (and which first come from those of the line and of regiments) are marked on the margin in CAPITALS.

The words of command given by leaders of half squadrons, divisions, or sub-divisions, are marked on the margin in *Italics*.

S. 24. When the Regiment or Line is formed and halted, and wheels forward to a Flank into open Column of Half-Squadrons or Divisions.

CAUTION!

At the CAUTION, that the regiment will wheel forward (to the right or left) into open column of —! each squadron from its leading flank will send out a non-commissioned officer to mark the square of the wheel.

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

At the word MARCH! repeated by leaders of squadron, the line wheels up into the ordered divisions, the leaders of squadrons giving the word HALT! DRESS! which is done to the standing flank: and the other proper pivot leaders immediately place themselves on that flank of their respective bodies.—In this situation the whole remains, although the pivots do not cover (which must be the case if the divisions are unequal) nor is any one to move or attempt it, unless it is so ordered by the commander from the front.

Should

Should it be required again to form in line on the same ground, the divisions will go about, *ranks by three's*—*Wheel* back into the spaces they quitted, and again *front*.—Were they in such situation to wheel forward, there would be false distances, and an ill formed line.

If the column is to begin and continue in march, it is not essential to make the pivots cover previous to their moving, but they will in the course of their march gradually do so, and they will also in the same manner acquire their true wheeling-up distances from each other; for each starts with a distance not equal to its own front, but to that of the division which precedes it.

S. 25. When the Regiment or Line wheels into open Column, either by reining back or by wheeling back.

As it appears, that unless the divisions of a line are perfectly equal, their pivots will not cover when they wheel *forward* into open column, nor will their proper wheeling distances from each other be exact; and as these are circumstances so essential for the march of a column, and for its subsequent formation into line, that they must be attained before accuracy in either can take place:—The formation of a column from line, by wheeling the divisions *backward* instead of *forward*, will at once give these advantages, and it is thought may, in almost all situations of manœuvre, be made use of when the object is the prolongation of a given direction, and the after formation into line.

THREE'S ABOUT!—MARCH! { The line goes to
HALT! DRESS! { the right ABOUT,
ranks by three's.

TO THE—WHEEL!—MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!

The line WHEELS forward the quarter circle, by half squadrons or by divisions into open column.

THREE'S ABOUT!—MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!

The column comes ABOUT by three's and dresses to the pivot flank.

In this manner the pivot files have (nearly) kept their ground and cover; the distance from division to division is equal to the front of each; the leaders place themselves on the pivot flanks of divisions; any small irregularity of covering is easily corrected, and the column is in a situation either to form in line by wheeling up, or to move forward with exactness.

When the line breaks into open column by small divisions, and that the ground permits, this operation is performed by *reining back* on the pivot flank.

Fig. 20. 17. S. 26. *When the Regiment or Line, after having wheeled into open Column, marches to the Flank or in any other given direction.*

THE COLUMN!
 MARCH!

Fig. 20.

If the prolongation of the line on which the column stands is the object, such line must be marked by persons thrown forward in it, from distance to distance, who are successively passed by the pivot leaders of the divisions.

If the head of the column is ordered to change its direction, the new line must continue to be marked in the same manner that the old one was; and each division,

division, when it arrives at the place where the leading one changed into it, will successively conform.

If a straight line is not meant to be observed, the leader of the column will march by his eye; the other divisions will follow his exact path at their just distances, and no advanced person need be sent out to the front.

S. 27. When the Head of the open Column changes Direction on a moveable pivot (S. 8.) and enters on a line which it is to prolong. Fig. 16. 17. 18.

Before the head of a considerable column in *march* enters a straight line which it is to prolong, and form upon, and whose direction has been previously ascertained by the commander; a point of entry must be marked by a placed person (S), (who is to remain there till he is relieved) and also another point in it (r), at least sixty or seventy paces from the first person.—Three other persons (m. n. o.) immediately and successively prolong themselves on (r. S.) as the original base, and place themselves 150 paces from (S.) and from each other. Two of these persons at least having taken their station by the time that the leading regiment enters the line, as soon as the head of it approaches the first of them, he gallops on, and anew alignes himself beyond the other two, and this operation each successively repeats till the column *halts*.

CHANGE DIRECTION!

—Shoulder forward!

Forward!

The head of the column will in general be so led, as *gradually* to enter the new direction at or near the first given point (S.) and will then, by continuing its regular pace, move along the line.—

The

} The other divisions successively enter in the same manner, and preserving their just distances, pass with their pivots the several objects established in the new line, and thus cover from front to rear.

In this manner the *column* always marching on two advanced objects; the point of entry being fixed and remaining; the commanding officers of regiments moving correctly on the flank of their leading divisions; the adjutants occasionally stopping in the new line, as points which the pivots of their regiments are to pass—must correct any small inaccuracy of the march of the column and keep the whole pivots in the general direction given by the advanced persons.

It is only when the column of manœuvre is marching in a straight alignement, that the commanding officer is invariably attached to the head division of his regiment; for in other situations of march, he need by no means remain fixed at its head, but be moveable on its flank, in order to watch over its general progress.



Fig. 19.

S. 28. When the open Column wheels on a fixed Point into a new Alignement.

The alignement is entered by the leading division wheeling either to its *pivot* or *reverse* flank. In either case the pivot flank officers arrive on that line, and march along it; and when the line is formed by wheels up to the pivot flank, it will in the former instance (B) face towards the rear of the column, and in the latter instance (C) towards the head of the column.

S. 29.

S. 29. *When the open Column wheels on its halted reverse Flank into a new Alignement and marches on it.* Fig. 19. C.
Fig. 10.

CAUTION TO

Right Wheel!

Halt! Dress!

March!

The new alignement being determined by placed objects, and the point of entry (c) being marked, the leading officer who has marched his pivot flank on that point, when he arrives at a distance equal to the front of his division from it, orders

$\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{right} \\ \text{or} \\ \text{left} \end{array} \right\} \text{Wheel!}$ (according to what-

ever is the reverse flank); and the wheel is made so that on the conclusion of it, at the word, *Halt! Dress!* he himself shall be placed on the new alignement on the pivot of his division ready to give the word *March!* as soon as the succeeding division has arrived at the wheeling point.

Right Wheel!

Halt! Dress!

March!

The officer of the second division gives his word *Wheel!* when he arrives at the ground which the first is quitting, and then *Halt! Dress!* when the wheel is completed; in this situation he remains, till he perceives that the preceding division has gained from him a distance equal to the front of his division, he then instantly gives the word *March!* and follows in column. Each succeeding division observes the same directions, and the equality of pace being preserved, the column may continue its march in perfect order.

It

It is to be observed, that by whatever degree of wheel on a fixed flank, the *leading* division of a column enters on a new direction, it is never to move on till the succeeding one is come up to it, and on the instant of wheeling.

Fig. 19. B. *S. 30. When the Open Column wheels on its halted Pivot Flank into a new Alignement, and marches in it.*

CAUTION!	{	The leading division begins its wheel to the pivot flank on the alignement itself, when its pivot flank officer arrives at the point of wheeling (d), instead of (as in the preceding section) beginning at the distance of a division short of that point.
<i>Left Wheel!</i>		
<i>Halt! Dress!</i>		
<i>March!</i>		

Fig. 20. *S. 31. When the open Column, composed of Divisions of unequal Strength, wheels to its reverse fixed Flank, into a new Alignement.*

CAUTION!	{	The pivot flank continues to direct, till the leading division arrives in its full front, behind its proper wheeling ground, and at a due distance from it. The word,
<i>Right wheel!</i>		

{ right
 or
 left } *Wheel!* being then given,

the reverse flank (c) of that division stops, and the other one completes the wheel, so that at the next words,

Halt!

Halt! Dress!
March!

Halt! Dress! March! the pivot officer may be exactly placed on and prolong the new line of direction; they thus succeed each other, observing that a stronger division (a) wheels short of the ground of its preceding weaker one (b), by the space of as many files as it exceeds that preceding one; and a weaker division overpasses the ground of its preceding one, by the extent of as many files as it is deficient: in both cases, after the wheel, the divisions will have retained the same relative situations as before its commencement, and the pivot flanks will still cover.

If the wheels are made to the *pivot* flank, then the inequality of divisions does not operate, and they commence on the arrival of each pivot at the wheeling point.

S. 32. When a Regiment or Line already formed is to wheel into open Column, and prolong its Direction. Fig. 21.

Three persons (m. n. o.) take their stations beyond the flank, to be prolonged as points of *march*—the divisions should be wheeled back into open column—the column moves on the points of march, and the adjutants, by making occasional halts in the true line which they can take up from the advanced persons, and from each other, bound the pivot flanks of the column, and preserve it in its proper direction.

S. 32.

Fig. 23.

S. 33. When the open Column halts in the new Direction, in order to wheel up into Line.

When the first or the last division, according to circumstances, arrives at a given point in the alignment, the whole column HALTS! by order; and if the covering and dressing of the pivot flank leaders want any correction, it is instantly made from the front division towards the rear, along the placed objects that have determined the alignment.—The files of men next to the pivot leaders, are to follow and partake of all their movements, and neither to crowd on them, or remain opened from them: therefore, whenever such leaders cover, and are well aligned, their adjoining files will be the same, and can want no farther correction.

The column receives the word, HALT! when its leading division is at a wheeling distance short of the point where its flank is to be placed.

Fig. 22.

S. 34. When Part of the open Column halts in the new Direction, and the remaining Divisions are ordered to enter it by Flank marching.

HALT!

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!

Halt! Dress!

When the head of a regimental column arrives at a given point, the whole is ordered to HALT!—Such divisions of the column as are still in the old direction are then ordered to WHEEL to their pivot flank ranks by three's.—They MARCH! and successively

MARCH!

Halt!—Three's Wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dress!

ly place their pivots on the new line at their just wheeling distances, which are ascertained for them by the persons they timeously detach for that purpose. (S. 36. 41.)—The whole pivots being thus covered and dressed in the new direction, the column is prepared for wheeling up into line.

Where the column is considerable, and consists of several regiments, and that some of them are not arrived in the intended line, then such part of the last entered regiment, as is not in the line, will gain it by the flank march of divisions; and each other regiment that has not entered, will march in a separate column towards its own *head* point in the line, and when near it, its particular divisions *wheel*, ranks by three's to the flank, and then establish themselves in open column on the new line (as in S. 36. 41.) or if such regiments enter at their *rear* points, they will then prolong the line, till the whole are upon it (S. 29. 30. 42.) which is the best general method.

S. 35. *When the open Column, halted on the Ground on which it is to form, wheels up into Line.* Fig. 23.

WHEEL INTO LINE!

Distances being just, and pivot leaders being truly covered—the caution is given, WHEEL INTO LINE! when the then pivot flank leaders place themselves each on the reverse flank of such division, as by its wheel up brings them

H

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

them to their true place in squadron. The leading division of each squadron sends out a person to line himself with the pivot files.—At the word, MARCH! the whole wheel up into Line, which is marked by the pivot men, and also bounded by the horses heads of the faced markers of it.—HALT! DRESS! is then given (as well as the other words by each squadron leader) the instant before the completion of the wheel, and eyes are then turned to the standing flank (to which the correction of the squadron is made) and remain so till otherwise ordered—so that a line formed by wheels to the left will remain with eyes to the left; and one formed by wheels to the right, will remain with eyes to the right.

During the wheel up, the standard moves to its place in squadron, and at the halt, every individual has gained his proper post.

After the HALT, DRESS! each leader instantly corrects the dressing of his squadron; but if that of the regiment is defective, and must be remedied, then the commanding officer orders EYES to be turned to that which was the leading flank when in column (or he may do it from the other flank) and a field officer from thence, by riding quickly along the front, and without displacing the pivot men (who before the wheel up must have been truly posted) makes such small internal corrections as the general line requires.

CHANGES

CHANGES of POSITION of the REGIMENT from LINE, by movements of the open column, are made either on a *fixed* point within the regiment, or on a *distant* point without it.

ON A FIXED POINT.

S. 36. When the Regiment forms open Co- Fig. 24. C.
lumn of Divisions, behind a placed Flank
Division, and throws back the other
Flank.

Two persons are advanced immediately before the flank division, to mark, and who face to the determined line on which the pivots of the column are to stand.

CAUTION !

{ The flank division is placed perpendicular to that line, and with its pivot upon it.

DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL !

MARCH !

HALT, DRESS !

{ The line WHEELS up into open column of similar divisions, towards the placed division.

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL !

MARCH !

HALT, DRESS !

{ The divisions WHEEL the quarter circle, each ranks by three's, the (reverse, and not the pivot) flank leading, and the conductor being there placed.

MARCH !

Halt !—Three's Wheel up !

March !

Halt, Dress.

{ The divisions MARCH, and form in open column behind the head division and each other, preserving their wheeling and interval

interval distances, and placing their pivot flanks on the new line, which is taken from the original objects in it, and prolonged to each of them by their own detached persons.—The *pivots* being covered and dressed and distances just from front to rear of the column, the whole is in a situation to *wheel* into line.

The better to ascertain those flank points, the coverer of each pivot leader will successively, as they approach the new line, gallop on and place himself upon it, at the wheeling distance of his division from the one before him, facing to the head of the column, and covering exactly those that have already taken their places therein.—The coverer thus standing on the spot which his leader is afterwards to occupy, such and every other leader, when he arrives at the line, stops there himself, allows his division to pass on behind its marker, till its *rear* comes up: he then *Halts, fronts!* it, and *dresses* and closes it to its pivot marker on the line.—

Halt!—Three's wheel up!
March!
Halt, Dress!

line.—It is to be observed, that in this case the divisions *cross* the new line, in order to place their pivots upon it.

All divisions, that by flank marching mean to form in open column on a new line, should take particular care that the last part of their movement, and at least for a space equal to their own extent, is made in a line not oblique, but square and perpendicular to the line of pivots, for thereby they will at once form up, firm, compact, and on their true ground; and, therefore, in the first part of their march, the head of their divisions should not be directed on their future pivot point, but rather wide of it, so as to allow for the square entry of each on its forming ground.

If when from line, divisions wheel into open column *towards* a standing division, and the flanks of the division next such standing one may not thereby be sufficiently disengaged for whatever movement is immediately to be required, such division (alone) may be ordered only to half wheel, quarter wheel, or rein back a flank, as may best answer the proposed end.

S. 37. When the Regiment forms open Column of Divisions before a Flank Division, and throws forward the other Flank.

Two persons are placed behind the flank division, in order to give the determined line on which the pivots of the column are to stand, as directed in the preceding movement. Fig. 24. B.

CAUTION!

H 3

{ The *flank* division
by wheeling or counter-
marching, is placed
with its pivot on, and
perpen-

DIVISIONS, RIGHT WHEEL!
 MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!

THREE'S LEFT WHEEL!
 MARCH!
Halt! Dress!

MARCH!
Halt!—Three's Wheel up!
 MARCH!
Halt! Dress!

perpendicular to, that line, and in such situation it makes front towards the rear.

The line WHEELS up into open column of divisions towards the placed division.

The divisions WHEEL the quarter circle, each ranks by three's, the pivot flank leading.

The divisions MARCH and form open column as before—In this case as their pivot flanks lead, they do not cross the new line, but arrive at and place them upon it; the pivot leader himself there remaining.—The pivots being covered and distances just, the column stands ready to WHEEL into line, or to march on.

Fig. 25.

S. 38. *When the Regiment forms open Column of Divisions, before and behind a central Division.*

The central division is named, and also the wings, as they are to be before or behind it.

The

The *new* direction is taken, and the central division placed (as in S. 36.)

CAUTION !
DIVISIONS WHEEL IN-
WARDS;
MARCH !—HALT ! DRESS !

The line is ordered to WHEEL inwards by divisions of squadron towards the placed division, and thus stands in two open columns facing each other.

THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL !
MARCH !
Halt ! Dress !
MARCH !

The divisions WHEEL ranks by three's, both to the same flank, viz. their leading one, which in those that are to move to the front is the *pivot* flank, and in those that are to move to the rear, is the *reverse* flank.

Halt !—Three's wheel up !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

The part of the line, which leads with its reverse flank, forms in column *behind* the placed division (as in S. 36.); the part which leads with its pivot flank forms in column *before* the placed division (as in S. 37.); and its head division is to remember, that if the line is afterwards to be formed, it will take a double wheeling distance from the division it fronts, as they would then wheel up towards each other; but if the column is to move on, it will take only single distance.

In

In this formation the *pivot* line should be sufficiently marked by detached persons, both before and behind the central division, and the pivots of the wing, which forms behind it, will take their general direction from the pivots of those that form before it, as these last have the greatest facility in forming in consequence of their pivot flanks leading.

When the *whole* are thus in column facing the central division, if the line is to be formed, the whole will WHEEL up to their pivots (S. 35.)—If the column is to march, the necessary part of it will COUNTER-MARCH its divisions, (S. 45.) and then the whole can move on.

S. 39. When the Line of several Regiments forms open Column on a flank or central Division.

The given division is *placed* as already directed, and the whole line WHEEL up in divisions towards it. The regiment to which such division belongs, by the flank march of its divisions, ARRIVES in the new column (as in S. 41, 42, 43.)—The other regiments MARCH off separately in regimental columns, to the points which their adjutants have prepared for their entry in the new line, they there enter at the *head* or *rear* point, as directed (more generally at their rear point) (S. 41, 42.) and *stand* in open column.—The regiments, as they arrive and are successively ready, *wheel* up into line.

ON A DISTANT POINT.

S. 40. *When the Regiment changes to a distant Position in Front or Rear, by the Flank marching of the open Column, and that this Position is either parallel or oblique to the one it quits.* Fig. 6. B.
Fig. 14.

DIVISIONS—WHEEL!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

The regiment breaks into column of divisions, to which ever hand the new position out-flanks the old one, for to that hand will the whole have to incline during the march; and if it does not sensibly out-flank, then the regiment will break to the hand next to the point of intersection of the two lines, for that hand is nearest to, and will in general be the first to enter any part of the new position.

THREE'S—WHEEL!

MARCH!

Halt! Dress!

The regiment standing in open column is ordered to WHEEL its divisions by *three's* to a flank.—The leader of the second division has then a direction given him, which crosses the new line at the point (o), as near as can be judged where the flank of that division is to be placed. The whole are then put in motion.—The leader of the second division marches in his given direction at a steady pace; the commander of the regiment remains with the head

MARCH!

Fig. 30. 14.

Halt !
Three's wheel up !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

head division (c), and by making it gradually advance or keep back, regulates the heads of all the others during the march, as they endeavour to continue themselves nearly in the prolonged line of the heads of the two leading divisions ; but at any rate they are not to be before them : when those two divisions *halt* their pivots in the line, the others without hurrying arrive successively in the new direction, and stand in open column at their just wheeling distances.—When the head of the column is within 60 or 70 yards of the new line (its direction being already prepared) the pivot markers gallop out, and mark the pivot flanks of their several divisions.

In this manner the commander, who is himself with, and conducts the two leading divisions, moves them in the direction that best answers his views, and at once takes up any position, and to any front, that is necessary. As circumstances change his intentions, he may, at every instant, vary and direct them upon new points of march, the other divisions of the column conforming (without the necessity of sending particular orders) to whatever alterations of direction the *head* may take ; and the commander conducting that head so as to enable the rear to comply with its movements without hurry.—During the transition, the wheeling distances should be nearly preserved by the divisions ; but at any rate great care must be taken that they are correct, just before entering the new line.

When

When the divisions in this manner gain a new position by flank marching, they always break to the flank which is nearest to that position, and place their pivot flanks upon it.

When the new line (c) out-flanks towards the point of intersection, then the regiment breaking to that hand will have its head (a) nearer to the new line than its rear.—When the new line B out-flanks from the point of intersection, then the regiment breaking from that point will have its head (b) farther from the new line than its rear; but in this case the division must be so directed during the march, by making a kind of gradual wheel forward upon the rear, that the head (b) shall enter the new line before the rear arrives upon it.

When the line consists of several regiments, the directing one changes its position in the above manner, but the others break into open column towards it, and each moves in regimental column to its rear (or head) point of entry in the new line. (S. 41, 42.)

S. 41. *When the Regiment changes Position, by breaking into open Column of Divisions or Half Squadrons, marches to the Point in a new Line where its Head is to be placed, and enters on the Line by the Flank March of its Divisions.*

Fig. 6. C.
G.

[The pivot flank of the column being directed on the person (c) who marks the flank point in the new line, the

Fig. 11.

HALT!

THREE'S—WHEEL!

MARCH!

Dress!

MARCH!

Halt!

Three's wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dress!

the whole will HALT when arrived within a few yards of him, and a point of direction (d) 60 or 70 yards beyond c. is supposed also to be ascertained.—The whole divisions are then WHEELED by three's (to the right or left as is necessary to conduct into the new line) and the pivot markers move out to mark their points for each division. (S. 36.)

At the word MARCH! the whole divisions move by their flanks; the head one places its pivot at a wheeling distance from the person (c) and every other one in the manner before directed, arrange themselves behind the head one and behind each other: their flanks being corrected by the commanding officer, they are then ready to *wheel up* into line.

The flank which the divisions *break* to by *three's*, and move from, will depend on which side of the person (c) they are to be arranged, and which way the line is to face.

S. 42. *When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into open Column of Divisions, or Half Squadrons, marching to the Point in the new Line, where its Rear is to be placed, and entering on and prolonging the Line, by the successive Wheels of its Divisions.* Fig. 6. F.

Fig. 10.

HALT!

Besides the person who marks the point of entry, two advanced points of march must be given—the column then enters by the successive wheels of its divisions and moves on (as in S. 29. 30.) and when its last division is at its point, it receives the word HALT! and pivots being corrected, the whole are ready to wheel up into line.

When a regimental open column enters a new position, where its rear flank is to be placed.—*If the wheels are made to the pivot hand*, it receives the word, HALT! when its rear division has just completed its wheel into the new direction. *If the wheels are made to the reverse hand*, it receives the word HALT! when the last division but one has completed its wheel into the new direction, and the last division itself, by the flank march by three's, places its pivot flank at the given point.

When an open column, marching on a straight line, is to form at a point where its rear flank is to be placed, it will receive the word HALT! when the pivot of its rear division arrives at that point.

I

By

By these operations of entering a new line at the *head*, or (more generally) at the *rear* point, will the distant changes of a considerable line be commonly made; each regiment breaking from the old line, and entering the new one in separate column; the whole of which movement may be made at any required pace. The regiments within themselves are at all times collected; there can hardly be any impediments from ground (where it is possible to move at all) that can prevent the transit of the regimental column from the one point to the other; the line is taken up just by placing the pivot flanks upon it, and the distances are most correct, being taken up in all cases from the front of the column.—Should the presence and nearness of an enemy make it too precarious thus to change position in detached columns, the *Echelon* (or diagonal) marches must take place, as far as they apply to situation.



S. 43. *When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into open Column, marching to the Point in the new Line, where a central Division is to be placed, and there entering on the Line.*

Fig. 6. H.
Fig. 12.

— *Wheel!*
Halt! Dress!
March!
HALT!

The leading division of the column having at the given point *wheeled* into the alignment, followed by the others, as far as the named central division; the word **HALT!** is then given, and the column stops.

THREE'S WHEEL!

Such divisions as have already wheeled into the alignment, being now at their proper points, remain so.—Such divisions

MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!

} divisions as are still in the old direction are ordered to WHEEL by three's, to the flank which conducts to their place in the new line, and the markers move forward.

MARCH!
 Halt!
 Three's—wheel up!
 March!
 Halt! Dress!

} At the command to MARCH! they all move and halt with their pivot flanks on it ready to WHEEL up into line. (S. 34. 42.)

This movement includes both the operations of a regiment as entering a new line, where its rear is to rest, and where its front is to rest.

S. 44. *When the Regiment changes Position by breaking into open Column, marching to the Point in the new Line where its Head Division is to be placed, and on which its Rear Divisions form by the diagonal March of each.* Fig. 8 C. Fig. 7. A. B.

HALT!
 ON THE—REIN
 BACK!
 MARCH!
 Halt! Dress!

{ The column will advance to the spot where its leading division is to be placed, and will then receive the word HALT!—The leading division will then more accurately be placed on the new line, and each of the other divisions will be ordered to WHEEL BACK on its reverse flank, as much as is necessary to place that flank perpendicular to its point in the new line.—The conducting officers having placed them-

1 2

selves

MARCH!

Shoulder forward!

Halt! Dress!

selves on that flank, the whole will **MARCH!** and successively form up to the leading division by the diagonal movement. (S. 71.)—In this manner the divisions of the column arrive in full front one after the other, in the new line; and that line must face the same way that the column did.

If the column halts perpendicular (A) to the new line, its divisions will wheel back one-eighth of the circle or a half wheel.—If the column halts oblique (B) to the new line, the divisions will proportionally wheel so as to be placed perpendicular to their future lines of march.

1. *If the line was to be formed on the rear division of the column*—that division would remain placed, the others would wheel **ABOUT** by three's—Wheel **BACK**, on the pivot flanks of the column, as being those which conduct into line—**MARCH** and then **HALT**—wheel *about*, successively, and *dress*, in the line of the rear division.

2. *If the line was to be formed on the rear division, but facing to the rear*—the whole column would first countermarch, each division by files, and then proceed as in forming on a front division.

3. *If the line was to be formed on a central division of the column*—that division would stand fast, or make such change on its own center as might be required—those in front of it would be ordered to wheel **ABOUT** by three's—the whole except the central division would wheel back the named degree; those in its front on the proper pivot flanks of the column, and those in the rear on its reverse flanks, such being the conducting flanks into line.—The whole would then march into line with the central company (as in S. 71. .)—If the column was a retiring one, and the line was to front to the rear, the divisions must
each

each countermarch before the formation began, and the head would be thrown back, and the rear forward.

THE CHANGES OF POSITION OF A COLUMN are the same as those of a LINE, after that line has broken into column; only the wheels from line into column, and from column into line, are not included.

S. 45. *When the Open Column changes its Front and leading Flank by the Countermarch of its Divisions, each on its own Ground.* Fig. 27.

DIVISIONS WILL
COUNTERMARCH!
FROM THE — BY
THE REAR FILE!

MARCH!

Halt! Front! Dress!

{ The column being halted, the pivot coverer takes exactly the place of his leader, but stands with his horse facing to the rear.—The whole divisions then FILE from their reverse flanks, each by its own rear, and such flank (now to become its pivot one) is brought up, the front rank man to the stationed person. The following files *close* in to their leaders, the column stands square, but facing to its former rear, and the coverer reins back to make place for the proper flank leader.—The column has thus changed its front and leading flanks.

In the countermarch, the filing is always from the flank which is not the pivot, but is to become such, and the conducting officers will lead out to a distance

of half the front of their divisions before they begin to countermarch.

This countermarch of each division is an evolution of great utility. It is equivalent to the WHEEL ABOUT of each division of the open column, but without altering the line of pivots, or their true covering. It at once changes the front of a column. It enables a column marching in an alignement to return along that same line, and to take such new positions in it as circumstances may require, without inverting the front of the line.—It applies to the half, and quarter, as well as full and open column. In many situations of forming from column into line, it becomes a necessary previous operation.

When a column has thus countermarched by divisions, unless the divisions are equal, the distances will not be the true wheeling up ones, but will be such as are equal to the front of the preceding division, and therefore the true distances must be regained before the divisions can truly wheel up into line.

S. 46. When the Open Column changes its leading Flank, by bringing up the Rear Division to the Front, successively followed by each other.

Fig. 28. A.

HALT!
CAUTION!

If the right of the regiment is in front, the left to be brought up, and the column to continue to advance. The whole is ordered to HALT! At the caution LETT WING to the front,

*Three's Right Wheel!**March!**Halt! Dress!**March!**Halt!**Three's wheel up!—March!**Halt! Dress!**March!*

front, the leader of the left (the rear) division immediately orders it, *Three's Right Wheel! March!* till his left flank can freely pass the right flank of the others. He then commands, *Halt! Wheel up! March!* close by the right flank of the division then preceding him, he himself being now on the right, which becomes his pivot flank.

*Three's Right Wheel!**March!**Halt! Dress!**March!**Halt!**Three's wheel up!**March!**Halt! Dress!**March!*

The officer commanding his preceding division, as soon as the other approaches him, orders *Three's Right Wheel! March!* behind the now leading one.—*Halt! Wheel up!* when he covers, and then *March!* when at the due wheeling distance. All the other divisions successively perform the same operation, and when the right division has taken its place in the rear, the whole column is in perfect order, and proceeding in whatever direction is given to it.

If the column before this operation stands closed to half or quarter distance, then each division proceeds as above directed, and takes its distance from its preceding one before it moves on.

Fig. 23. B.

This

This operation is often required in taking up original positions from column of march. It changes the leading flanks of a regiment or a more considerable column, and enables it to enter on a line which unforeseen circumstances require it should prolong.—It permits regimental columns, assembled at a rendezvous, to march off from whatever flank is most advantageous, for each to enter on its line of formation.—It prepares a column which has expected to form by wheels to its left, to form by wheels to its right, without inverting its order. In a column composed of several regiments, where an inversion of the regiments, but not of the wings of the line, is meant to be prevented; then each regiment separately will perform this operation; but if the inversion also of the wings is to be avoided, then the whole column will proceed, as if it was a single regiment.

It must be observed, that the leading division comes out generally on the side to which front is naturally made, because the divisions which are free can at any time wheel into line, while the others are marching behind it.

At the same time it may be observed, that if the line on which the pivots of the column stand is necessarily to be prolonged, that end will be best attained by the divisions coming out to the other side, viz. to their pivot hand.

Fig. 29. C.

THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL!
&c.

MARCH!
Three's—Wheel! &c.

March!

Three's Wheel up! &c.

If the column is to change its wings on the ground on which it then stands. The rear division proceeds as already directed: all the others wheel by three's ABOUT! and MARCH on towards the place from whence the left moved. When the second division arrives at the first, it *wheels three's!* to the flank—*Marches!* behind

March!

hind the leading one, *Halts!*
Wheels up! and *Marches!*
 on, when at its due distance.
 In this manner all the rest
 proceed, till the first and
 last division of the column
 have exchanged places, only
 that the whole column
 is removed a distance to one
 flank, of a space equal to
 the front of its leading division.

S. 47. *When the Column changes its leading Flank by the Divisions marching through each other from Rear to Front.* Fig. 29. D.

DIVISIONS—PASS!
 MARCH!
Halt!

{ Supposing the column standing marched from the right—
 at the word DIVISIONS (to the right and left) PASS!
 MARCH! all the divisions (except the last) do open by passing half to each flank, a space equal to their own front, sufficient to allow a division to march through.

March!
Incline inwards!
March!
Forward!

{ The last division *Marches!*
 on, through the others, and as soon as its rear rank arrives at the front rank of the one next it, that division closes in by inclining marches, and follows at its due distance.—
 In this manner they succeed each other till the column is formed,

formed, as marched off from the left, and continues to advance.

CAUTION!—MARCH!

Halt, Dress!

MARCH!

Wheel about inwards!

Forward!

If the ground of the column is not to be changed by this operation.—The divisions (except the last) will wheel about OUTWARDS, by half divisions. The whole will receive the word MARCH! the leading one proceeds towards the front through the opening, the others towards the rear, and as each arrives at its preceding and advancing division, it in due time *Wheels* very briskly its subdivisions inwards, and follows at its proper distance in open column, till the leading and closing division have exchanged places.

The above method of countermarch is more calculated for a parade than for the general movements of a regiment, but preserves the column on its original line.

S. 48. When the Regiment in open Column of Divisions changes its Position, on a fixed Front, Rear or Central Division.

Fig. 24.

1. *If on a front division.*—That division is placed with its pivot flank on and perpendicular to the new direction, and points before it and behind it are given as ordered for the regiment—The others *Wheel!* to a flank by three's; *March!* and cover it in the new line. (S. 36. 37.)

2. *If*

2. *If on a rear division.* That division will be placed—each other division of the column will counter-march by file. The change will then be made as on a front division. (S. 36. 37.) The divisions of the column will again each counter-march, the change will have been thus completed, and the column is in a situation to wheel up into line, or to move on. Fig. 24.

3. *If on a central division.* That division (a) will be placed perpendicular to, and with its pivot flank on the new direction; and points (c, b) before it and behind it are given, where the pivots of its adjoining divisions are to be placed. All such as were before it counter-march and face it. The change will be made before it and behind it (as in S. 38.) The divisions that counter-marched will again counter-march; and the column will stand formed in the new direction. Fig. 25.

Should it be intended to form the line immediately after making the change of position, in that case the division which faces to, and is next the placed one, would take care to *halt* in the new position with a *double* distance from the placed one, and the line would be immediately formed by the *wheel up* of its divisions, without making the second counter-march. But when the column, after changing position, is to proceed in the new direction, and therefore to be counter-marched in part; in that case *single* distance only is to be taken, and a previous caution is given accordingly.

From a line or from open column.—The divisions of a column may certainly arrange themselves anew *before* any named one, without counter-marching, or without facing to it; but the difficulty of taking just distances, and covering of pivots, is thereby increased.

1. *If from line.*—The divisions would wheel up from the given one, and march from their *pivot* flanks. When

When arrived on the line, they must take their distances and dressing from the *rear*, which increases the difficulty.

2. *If from column.*—They would move in the same manner from their pivot flanks, and take their ground before the named division.

This mode takes place in the formation of the close column from line; but there the accuracy of distances is not difficult to attain.

S. 49. When the Regiment in open Column of Divisions, changes its Situation to a distant Position in its Front, Rear, or to a Flank.

Fig. 11. 10. 22. 1. *If to its front.*—The column will march forward to some given point in that line, and then enter it according to one of the prescribed modes, at which its *head, central, or rear* division is to stand. (S. 41. 42. 43.)

Fig. 10. 11. 22. 2. *If to its rear.*—Each division of the column will countermarch, and it will then proceed as having the position in its front. (S. 41. 42. 43.)

Fig. 30. 3. *If to either flank.*—The divisions will gain the new position by a flank march of three's; or if the position is a distant one, the head of the column will march towards it, and enter it as a position in front. (S. 40. 41. 42. 43.)

S. 50. *When the open Column halts and forms in Line to the leading Division, and facing either to the Front or Rear, by the Divisions successively passing behind the leading one, and each other.* Fig. 6. D.

HALT!

The column arrives in the direction of, or in any direction oblique or perpendicular behind the line, and HALTS. —The leading division either remains on its ground, or wheels to its reverse flank, or wheels about on its reverse flank, according to the position to be taken. Fig. 9. A.B.

MARCH!

—Wheel!

Halt! Dress!

March!

—Wheel!

Halt! Dress!

March!

Halt! Dress!

All the pivot leaders place themselves on the *reverse* flank of the divisions, and eyes are turned to them. The head division standing fast, the others are put in *motion*, and each division successively *wheels* and passes close behind the head division, and again *wheels* when opposite its place, *marches* up, and *halts* to the standing part of the line, which is properly prolonged for the correction of their dressing.

The divisions thus successively come into line, making their wheels rapidly and sharp, so as not to impede the following of the column.

This formation occurs when the direction of the march is nearly in the prolongation of the line, and when a regiment arriving on the flank of a line already formed has to lengthen out that line.

Fig. 9. B. S. 51. *When the Regiment in open Column forms Line, facing to its Rear, on any Division.*

1. *If on its front division.*—That division wheels about on its reverse flank, and forms as prescribed (S. 50. 41.)

2. *If on a rear division.*—The divisions of the column each countermarches, and the formation becomes the same as to the front (in S. 50. 41.)

Fig. 25.

3. *If on a central division.*—That division is wheeled to its reverse flank, and placed perpendicular to and with its pivot on the new line.—The divisions that were in *front* of it countermarch.—The column will then change its position *before* and *behind* it (as in S. 38.) and being thus prepared, will *wheel* up into line.

S. 52. *When the Regiment in open Column is to form to the reverse Flank.*

If the regiment is required suddenly to be formed on the ground on which it then stands, the *reverse* flanks of the divisions will quickly be covered, and wheel up into line on those flanks.—In this situation, the divisions of the regiment will be inverted.

If no inversion is to take place, the formation will be a successive one; by the head division wheeling to the reverse hand, and halting, and the others marching on past it, and successively wheeling up. (S. 50.)

When the head of a column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its pivot hand, or by the flank march of its divisions from its reverse hand, the formation made on that line by the wheeling up
the

the divisions, will front towards the *rear* of the column.—When the head of the column advances and enters a new direction, by wheeling to its reverse hand, or by the flank march of its divisions from its pivot hand; the formation made on that line by wheeling up, will front the same way as the *head* of the column did when advancing to the line. Fig. 19. 23.

The open column forms in line on its front, rear or central division, by the Echelon march (as in S. 44.)

The open column closes to close column on any named division, and forms in line by the deployments of the close column.

S. 53. *Change of Front, by the Countermarch of the Squadron, Regiment, or Line.*

The Countermarch changes the front and flanks of a body, and faces it to a rear, and is equivalent to a wheel of the half circle made on any of its parts or points.—It is *successive*, (the body being halted) by each of its parts wheeling successively on its own ground as it comes to its turn.—Or *progressive* (the body being in motion) by each part wheeling, when it comes up to the point at which the leading part wheeled and begun the countermarch. In the first case; the body must shift its ground a space at least equal to its front. In the second, it will perform this operation of the countermarch on its original ground, exchanging flanks and fronts.

The Countermarch from one flank to the other may be made either before or behind the body.—When from both flanks it will be made both before and be-

hind the body.—Markers will always be placed, to give the precise ground on which the countermarch is to be made.—The column of countermarch must at no rate improperly lengthen out, and the wheels of its parts must be firm and rapid.

Squadron.

Fig. 27.

1. *The squadron will countermarch from either flank by file; ranks by two's or ranks by three's, in the manner prescribed for the divisions of a column.—(S. 45.)*

2. *The squadron will countermarch from both flanks on its center—by file, or ranks by two's.—From the right flank behind the rear rank; from the left flank before the front rank; till they arrive on each other's ground, which has been preserved by marking persons: the following files or two's front, and close in to their leaders, the standard turns about on its own ground, and the half squadrons dress to it.*

3. *The squadron will countermarch from one flank by sub-divisions.—Sub-divisions will wheel to the flank. The leading one will then wheel the half circle, and proceed along the flank of the squadron, by the sub-divisions of which it is followed, till the flanks have exchanged places. The whole being then in column, wheel to their pivots into line.*

4. *The squadron will countermarch on its center by sub-divisions.—One half squadron wheels about by three's—each half squadron wheels inwards by sub-divisions, and the standard faces about.—Sub-divisions of the half squadrons move on, and wheel successively into their places beyond the standard.—The half squadron that wheeled by three's, again wheels about; and the squadron stands faced to the rear on its former ground.*

5. *The squadron will change front to the rear by the wheels*

wheels of half squadrons.—One half squadron advances a little more than its own length, and halts.—Both half squadrons wheel about inwards.—The retired half squadron moves up and joins the other.—A half squadron or division, or any small body, may change front in the same manner, by the wheels of its half parts.

6. *The squadron changes front by wheeling on its center.*—Half the squadron goes about ranks by three's.—The squadron wheels about on its standard. The half squadron comes about by three's, and the squadron is fronted to its former rear. Half squadrons or divisions may change front in the same manner.

Regiments.

The regiment may countermarch from one or from both flanks, by the wheels of divisions, sub-divisions, ranks by three's or two's: and the squadrons of regiments will be mindful of the operation of their interval distances, by whatever kind of column they move—or it may countermarch on its center, or any other point by sub-divisions—Or change front each squadron by wheels of half squadron, or squadron, in the manner before directed.

The line will countermarch or change front, in the same manner as prescribed for the regiment.

S. 54. Diminishing or increasing the Front of the Column of March.

Fig. 79.

The column of march or manœuvre, in consequence of obstructions in its route, which it cannot surround, is frequently obliged to diminish its front, and again to increase it when such difficulties are passed: it is one of the most important of movements, and a regi-

ment which does not perform this operation with the greatest exactness and attention, so as not to lengthen out in the smallest degree, is not fit to move in the column of a considerable corps.

The diminution or increase of the front of the column, is performed by the squadron when in movement, or when halted. In movement this operation is either done by each division successively, when it arrives at the point where the leading one of the column performed it; or else by the whole divisions of the squadron at the same moment. In either case the chief of the squadron, at the instant that it should begin to reduce or increase its front, gives the general CAUTION so to do, and the leaders of divisions give their words of execution to the sub-divisions to double behind, or move up briskly to the regulating ones, which preserve their original distances from each other, and never alter the pace at which the column was marching, but proceed as if they were totally unconnected with the operation that the others are performing.

When the column of divisions is to be reduced to that of sub-divisions, it will always be done by the others doubling from their pivot flank, behind their reverse flank sub-division, so that the squadron or regiment may remain ready to form in line, by a simple wheel up to the flank; therefore the doubling will be behind the right, when the right is in front, or behind the left, when the left is in front. When the front of the column is to be increased, the sub-divisions that doubled will move up to their leading one by a sharp incline. As in diminishing or increasing the front of the column in march, the pivot division is the one that quits its direction; the exactness of pivots after such operation, will appear to be interrupted; but this is of no consequence, and instantly regained in a column of march; it can hardly ever take place in a column of manœuvre, which has entered a line on which it is to form.

Squadron.

Squadron.

1. *When a squadron in march, and in column of divisions, diminishes its front, either by divisions successively, or the whole divisions at once.* When the leading division (suppose the right in front) arrives within twelve or fifteen yards of the point where it is necessary to diminish its front—The squadron leader will give a loud CAUTION that the doubling is to be made either successively, or by the whole squadron at once.

CAUTION.

Left sub-division, Halt!

Right incline, March!

Left forward!

If successively. On the general CAUTION given, the leader of the head division orders, *Left sub-division* (or whatever is the half of the marching body) *Halt!*; this it does until the right one, which continues its march steadily at the then pace, has just cleared its flank—he then orders, *Right incline, March!* which it does sharply and well forward; and when he perceives that it has doubled properly behind the right one, he gives the word, *Left forward!* at which it takes the rate of march, and its due distance, and pivot leaders are on that flank. Great vivacity is required in command and execution, not to impede the succeeding divisions, and improperly lengthen out the column.

Fig. 32. A.

Each other leader performs exactly the same operation when his division arrives on the spot where his preceding one doubled. Whatever is the front of the

the column, it is thus diminished one half (without extending it in length) till it comes to sub-divisions; and if a farther diminution becomes necessary, the sub-divisions must break into ranks by two's, and the ranks by two's into file.

Fig. 32.

If all at the same time. On the general caution from the squadron commander, each division leader without waiting for each other, proceeds as above.

2. *When the squadron column of sub-divisions in march* (suppose the right in front) *increases its front to divisions.*—The squadron commander gives a loud CAUTION, that column of divisions is to be formed either successively, or by the whole squadron at once.

CAUTION!

Left incline, March!

Forward!

Fig. 32. B.

Eyes left!

If successively.—On the general CAUTION to form divisions—The leader of the head division orders his second sub-division, *Left incline, March!* on which it briskly obliques to the left, and when its right is open, it receives the word *Forward!* which brings it up by its right to the first sub-division (which has continued to march with the utmost steadiness at its former rate) to which it joins itself; the leader takes post on the pivot flank of his division, and orders, *Eyes Left!* to where he is himself posted. Each other leader performs exactly the same operation, when his leading sub-division arrives on the spot where the preceding one doubled up.

If all at the same time. On the general CAUTION from

from the squadron commander, each division leader, without waiting for each other, proceeds as above.

When divisions double back, or form up in column, ranks may be well closed, and the transition from one situation to another, made as briskly as possible, and as soon as the column is in its new order, the pivot leaders place themselves on those pivots.

When the front of a column is to be diminished, and the obstacle is before the part which is not to double, such part must incline after the doubling is made, in order to pass it; but timely attention is to be given to bring up if possible, by inclining the part which is not to double, square to the opening through which it is to pass, before such doubling begins.—And when a diminution of front is immediately to follow an alteration in the direction of the march, such alteration should be made with a gradual sweep, so as to give the head of the column its new perpendicular direction, when it is at least twelve or fifteen paces from the point of breaking off.

The successive breakings of each division of the column at the point of difficulty, and its subsequent moving up again as soon as it has passed it, is the most general practice, but is the most likely to lengthen it out, which is the great evil to be avoided.—The reduction of front by the whole squadron at once, is therefore the most eligible; and for the same reason the increase of front (when the rear of it has cleared the difficulty) by the whole squadron, is to be preferred.

The squadrons of a regiment or line in column, will, as they come up successively to the point where the leading one made any change, perform the same operation.

When

Fig. 39.

*When the column has to pass a short defile, and that there is a certainty of immediately after resuming the front which it has diminished; then such part of the reverse flank of the leading division, as the defilé will receive, will pass it in front, and such part of the pivot flank as is necessarily stopt, will by command, *Wheel by three's inwards*, and follow close.—On quitting the defilé, the doubled part will form up briskly, but the general rate of the column will at no time be altered: and in this manner division succeeds division without any improper extension taking place.—But if the column must continue any time on a reduced front, and may expect farther alteration, then it should be diminished by the doubling back of divisions.*

Fig. 32.

When a close column, or one at a quarter distance, is to pass a defilé; before it enters it must stand on such a front as will require no farther reduction; and therefore on approaching the defilé a halt, if necessary, must be made, and such operation performed as will enable it to enter on such a front as it can maintain in passing. When the defilé is passed, a new arrangement will determine the advance of the column.

From column of files.—The men may at once move up to ranks by two's; or ranks by three's; or subdivisions, divisions, half divisions, or squadrons.

From column of ranks by two's.—The men may file; or they may at once move up to subdivisions, divisions, &c. but in order to march by ranks by three's, the two's must first wheel up, and then break into three's, and close up.

From column of ranks by three's.—The ranks may at once file off so as to march two in front, or the rear rank three's may successively double behind their respective front leaders, and march (as divisions of three's) three in front.—But in order to march four in front, the ranks by three's must first wheel up and then wheel ranks by two's, but without any formal closing

closing in of the squadron or retarding the column.—
Divisions of any kind may at once be formed up to.

Column of subdivisions, divisions, &c. enlarge or reduce their front on the march.

CLOSE COLUMN.

The general object of a considerable close column is to form the line to the front in the quickest manner possible: to conceal numbers from the knowledge of the adversary; and to extend in whatever direction the circumstance of the moment may require, which, till it is nearly accomplished, cannot be obvious to an opposite enemy.—It is a situation for the assembly, more than for the movement of troops.—It is not formed until the head of the troops is arrived in column of, whole, half, or quarter distance, near the ground where they are to extend into line.—The formation from close column into line is an original one; often protected by cannon; made at such a distance as not to fear interruption from an enemy; and avoiding the enfilade of artillery.—Its positions cannot fail to be truly taken.

The close column may generally be composed of half squadrons for the purposes of movement. But when halted and to deploy, it may then double its front, and stand in squadrons.

In the close column, when ready to deploy into line, there is a distance of two horses length between regiment and regiment,—of one horse's length between squadrons of the regiment,—of half a horse's length between the divisions and ranks of squadrons.—Officers and their coverers are on the pivot flanks of their di-

divisions—colours and supernumeraries are on the flanks, not the pivot ones; and music, farriers, or certain supernumeraries may also be in the rear of the regiment,—no single persons are between the ranks.

When the close column is formed and halted, the commanding officer (alone) gives orders for its MARCH, HALT, and commencement of formation in line.

A close column must loosen its divisions before it can well march in front, and its changes of direction must be made circling, and on a moving flank, to enable its rear gradually to comply. If too great intervals should be made in the column, they can best be closed by a halt of the head.

The close column is formed from line, or from the column of march.

When the regiment from line forms close column, it is necessary to disengage the heads of its divisions from one another, that they may the sooner and easier arrive at their position; this they do, by wheeling to the hand ordered an eighth wheel (of the quarter circle)—they then wheel ranks by three's to their leading flank—march to their place in column, and each wheels up by three's, which again forms the division.

That division is countermarched—The eighth wheel is toward the flank which is to be the head of the column, and the divisions break by three's to their conducting hand.

On this occasion, advantage will arise if the *eighth wheel* is made on the center of each body which does so wheel; as it will more effectually disengage the leading flanks.

S. 56. When the Regiment from Line forms Close Column.

1. Before or behind either of the Flank Half Squadrons.

CAUTION.

A CAUTION will express the half squadrons, and whether the formation is in front or rear of it: and a new position may be given to it, and its leader shifts, if it is necessary, to that flank which is to become the pivot one of the column, and another person places himself 10 or 12 yards before or behind him, according to circumstances, to mark the perpendicular and pivot line of the column.

HALF SQUADRONS TO
THE — WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The half squadrons of the regiments will eight wheel (of the quarter circle) to the hand ordered.

The

THREE'S — WHEEL!

MARCH!

Halt! Dress!

The half squadrons will WHEEL by three's, to which ever hand conducts them to their place in the close column, and leaders will shift accordingly.

MARCH!

The whole will MARCH to the front or rear of the named half squadron and each leader will proceed in the same manner as in forming open column from line (except that pivot markers are not sent out) stopping in his own person at his pivot point, and giving his words to *halt*, *wheel up*, and *dress*, to his half squadron, when it has arrived upon the proper ground on which it is to stand in close column.

Halt!

Three's Wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dress!

During the formation of the close column, as soon as the regiment is put in motion; the commanding officer will immediately place himself before the officer of the directing half squadron, and see that the pivot leaders cover each other in the perpendicular direction, whether such covering is taken from before or behind.

Fig. 33.

2. *On a Central Half Squadron.*

CAUTION.

A CAUTION of formation is given.—The named half squadron will stand fast, or be otherwise placed; its leader will place himself on its future pivot flank, and the line of pivots will be ascertained by a detached person.

RIGHT, EIGHT WHEEL!
&c. &c.
THREE'S — WHEEL!
&c. &c.

The half squadrons of the regiment will wheel towards the hand which is to be in front of the column, and leaders will shift accordingly.

MARCH!
Halt!
Three's Wheel up,
&c. &c.

At the word MARCH! the rest of the formation will proceed as before directed, part of the regiment arranging itself before and part behind the given half squadron, and the officers covering on the proper pivot flank.

Fig. 34. 35. *In forming close column, facing to the rear, the same operations take place as to the front, with this difference, that the named half squadron countermarches: the other half squadrons of the regiment wheel as directed, and lead from such flanks as establish a countermarch of the whole.*

In the same manner in which close columns are here formed from line, may *columns at half or quarter distance* also generally be formed, observing that in such cases pivot flank points are given by markers, as in the formation in open column.

If the close column of squadrons is formed from line, the intervals between them prevent the necessity of their making the eight wheel:—they will, therefore, at once break by three's to their leading flank, and march to their places in column, as before directed.

*The close column is formed from column of march—*By *halting* the head division, and ORDERING the others to close up and *halt* successively. If the column of march is composed of divisions, it may be ordered to double up to column of half squadrons, and again to close; the column of half squadrons may also double to column of squadrons, and again close ready to deploy into line. These doublings are made by the flank march by three's of each rear division, or rear half squadron, or by the oblique march, if distances allow it.—Or,—if the head division continues its march, the rear ones will be ordered to close at a quicker pace, and *each* successively to resume the rate of marching when they have so done.—The closing from open column to that at half or quarter distance is done in the same manner.

*The close column marches to its flank.—*To deploy into line; to correct intervals; to gain an enemy's flank; or for some other particular purpose. But a considerable movement to front or rear may require a still greater loosening of its divisions and ranks.

S. 57. When the Column marches to a Flank.

CAUTION.

A CAUTION will express to which flank. If to that which is not the pivot, the leading officer and coverer of each is ORDERED to move quickly by the rear of their divisions to that flank; and the serrefiles and colours who were on that flank exchange to the other.

THREE'S TO THE
WHEEL!
MARCH!

Halt! Dress!

MARCH!

The whole will WHEEL by three's to the flank and be put in MARCH, the officer that leads the front division taking care to move in the exact alignement which is prolonged for him, and all the others, in preserving their proper situations, dress and move by him.

HALT!
THREE'S WHEEL UP!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

When the column HALTS, and WHEELS UP by three's, the pivot leaders, &c. &c. are ORDERED to shift to their proper places (if not already at them) by the rear of their divisions, unless the intended and immediate formation of the line requires their remaining where they are.

S. 58. *When the Column marches to the Front.*

MARCH!

CAUTION!

HALT!

March!

March!

HALT!

Halt!

Halt!

The whole advance at the word **MARCH!**—If it is intended to loosen the column, a **CAUTION** so to do will be given, the whole will **HALT**, except the leading division, and each division will again successively *march* at a horse's distance.

When the general word **HALT!** is given, the column halts as it is then placed; but if a partial and low word *Halt* is given to the leading division only, the others still move on and halt successively in close column, by word from their leaders.

S. 59. *When the Column is to change Direction.*

If halted.

CAUTION.

A **CAUTION** will be given that it is to change direction either to the right or left.—The front division of the column is *wheeled* up into the new direction, and an advanced person is placed to determine the future line of pivots.

The

THREE'S LEFT WHEEL!

&c. &c.

MARCH!

Halt!

Three's wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dress!

The other divisions will WHEEL by three's to the ordered flank; MARCH! *Halt! Wheel up!* and cover in column. If this movement is made by the reverse flank, no shifting of leaders, &c. will be required, but one of the serrefile officers already there will conduct the flank movement of each, the words of command being still given by the proper pivot leader to *halt* and *wheel up*.

If in March.

If gradual and inconsiderable changes of direction are to be made during the march of the column, the *head* will, on a moveable pivot, effect such change, while all the other divisions, by advancing a shoulder, and inclining up to the flank which is the wheeling one, will successively conform to each other and to the leading division, so that at the word *forward*, they may move on in the straight line.

Fig. 36.

S. 60. *When the Column is to make Front to its Rear, by the Counter-march of its Divisions.*

If the divisions are at a sufficient distance to allow of it they will, each separately, on its

THE COLUMN WILL
COUNTERMARCH!

EVEN DIVISIONS,
RIGHT FILES!

MARCH!
Front!

THE WHOLE WILL
COUNTERMARCH!

MARCH!
Halt! Front!
Dress!

its own ground, countermarch, as directed for the open column. (S. 45.)—If the column is quite close, the whole will prepare to *file*, from the reverse flank. The even or every other division (reckoning from the head) will *file* to the flank, and form, so that their pivot flank may be three or four paces clear of the column.

They are then ordered to COUNTERMARCH towards the column, and at the same word, the odd divisions which have hitherto stood still, countermarch also each on its own ground; the even divisions *file* on till they are again in their proper places in column, and *Halt, Front.*

DEPLOYMENT INTO LINE.

The *close column* of the regiment forms in line, on its front, on its rear, or on any central division, by the DEPLOYMENT or flank march by three's, and by which it successively uncovers and extends its several divisions.

Before the *close column* deploys, its head division, whether it is halted or in movement, must be on the line into which it is to extend.—That line is therefore the prolongation of the head division, and such points in it, to one or both flanks, as are necessary for the formation of the regiment, are immediately taken.

The *flank march* must be made quick, parallel to the

the general line, and without opening out, the most particular precision is therefore required.—Each division, when opposite to its ground in line, will be most advantageously halted and wheeled up (or at least corrected) by a detached field officer of the regiment, in case its leader should not be critical in his commands; or, that he should not be heard; or, that his three's are too open; and thus may the defects of a preceding division be remedied by the judicious stop of the one following it.—The division is then brought up into line by its respective leader.—The justness of formations depend all together on officers judging their distances and timing their commands.—The officer, in leading his division into line, must bring it up perfectly square.—His dressing is always from the last come up division towards the other flank, and the eyes of all are turned to that division, and the formed part of the line.

As the head of the close column is always brought up to the line on which it is to extend, therefore, when the formation is made on the rear, or on a central division, such division, when uncovered, must move up to the identical ground which the front has quitted.

Fig. 79.

In the passing of an obstacle, parts of the regiment are frequently required to form in close column, and again deploy into line, although the division formed up to, continues to be moveable.

Before any column deploys.—The divisions of it are properly closed up, and square, and serrefiles, &c. are on the flanks, not the leading ones, that the movement may not be embarrassed.



S. 61. *When the Regiment in close Column of Half Squadron (suppose the Right in Front) deploys into Line.* Fig. 37.

1. *On the Front Division.*

CAUTION!

The column being halted with its front division in the alignment, and all the others in their true situations, parallel and well closed up to it, a point of forming and dressing upon is taken in the prolongation of that division (before the flanks of which two markers are placed) and towards where the left of the regiment is to extend (D.)—A CAUTION is given that the line will form on the front division.

THREE'S LEFT
WHEEL! MARCH!
Halt! Dress!

At the words—THREE'S LEFT WHEEL! MARCH! *Halt! Dress!* the front division stands fast, its leader shifting to the right, and all the others wheel (in this case always to the pivot flank.)

MARCH!

At the word MARCH! they go off quick, with heads dressed, moving parallel (not oblique) to the line of formation; the three's close and compact so as not to open the divisions out.

The leader of the second or leading division, having moved out to his right at the above word March, allows his division,

Halt !
Wheel up !
March !
Halt ! Dress !
March !

Halt ! Dress !

Halt !
Three's Wheel up !
March !
Halt ! Dress !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

sion, led by his coverer, to go on a space equal to its front (serrefiles exclusive) and then gives his words, *Halt ! Wheel up ! March ! Halt ! Dress !* and corrects and squares his division. He then being on its right, gives his word *March !* and the division proceeds towards its place in the alignment. The leader, when within ten or twelve yards, moves nimbly forward, and places himself before the left flank of the preceding division, and is thus ready to give the word, *Halt ! Dress !* at the instant his inward flank man (to whom the standard has by this time moved up) joins that division. He then expeditiously corrects his men (who have dressed upon the formed part of the line) on the distant given point, and resumes his proper post in squadron.

In this manner every other division proceeds, each being successively (by its officer who himself stops on the left flank of the division which precedes him) fronted, marched up, halted, and dressed in line.

The divisions, which give the intervals of squadrons, must take care to front opposite their ground in line, and send up a marker to give the interval flank. The standard will come up in its place with the right half of each squadron. The serrefiles will halt when their divisions front; and when the movement

ment of the other divisions allow of it, they will place themselves behind their own proper ones.

2. On the Rear Division.

The column being placed as before directed, and Fig. 38. a point of forming (D) taken to the right in the prolongation of the head division, and towards where the right of the regiment is to come.

CAUTION!

A CAUTION is given, that the line will be formed on the rear division. The leaders of divisions, and their coverers (except those of the rear division) will immediately be ORDERED to pass behind their several divisions, and post themselves on the right of each, exchanging places with their serrefiles. Two under officers are sent from the rear division, to place themselves correctly before the flank files of the front division, and the leader of the front division is shewn the point (D) in the alignment on which he is to march, taking his intermediate points if necessary.

THREE'S RIGHT
WHEEL! MARCH!
Halt! Dress!

The words, THREE'S RIGHT WHEEL! — MARCH! — *Halt! Dress!* are then given, and all the divisions (except the rear one,) wheel three's to the right (in this case always to the reverse flank.)

MARCH!

At the word MARCH! the wheeled divisions move on quick; their heads are dressed

M

to

} to the left; the front one moves in the alignment, and the others parallel, and close on its right.

March!

{ As soon as the rear division is uncovered, it receives the word, *March!* and proceeds. When within a few yards of its ground, its leader moves briskly up to the marker of its left in the new position, and there in due time gives his words, *Halt! Dress!* quickly correcting his division on the distant point of formation.

Halt! Dress!

{ In the mean time the leader of the division which immediately precedes the rear one, having at the first word, *MARCH!* gone briskly round to the rear of his division, without impeding its movement, and having allowed it to move on, led by his coverer, gives his words to *Halt! Front!* and *Dress*, when his division has marched a distance equal to its front, and thereby uncovered the one behind it (which, as already mentioned, immediately moves forward) he then places himself on its left.—As soon as his own front is clear, he gives his word *March!* his division proceeds, and he himself in due time advances to the right of the preceding division then on the line, and from thence gives his words *Halt! Dress!* when his own left

Halt!

Wheel up!

March!

Halt! Dress!

March!

Halt! Dress!

left joins such right, he corrects his division on the right, and resumes his post in squadron. The markers of intervals, standard, and serrefiles proceed as already mentioned.

Halt !
Wheel up ! &c.

Halt !
Wheel up !—March !
Halt ! Dress !

All the other divisions successively are conducted in the same manner, until the right one (which has been marching critically in the alignment, and on no account getting before it) receives, when it arrives on its just ground, the words, to *Halt—Front—and Dress.*

3. On a Central Division.

Forming points (D. D.) must be given to both flanks in the prolongation of the head division.—At the CAUTION of forming on a central division, the leading officers, and the serrefiles, will shift accordingly.—The divisions in front of the named one wheel to one flank; those in the rear of it to the other, according to the hand which leads to their ground.—The named division, when uncovered, moves up into line to its marked flank; those that were in front of it proceed as in forming on a rear division; those that are in rear of it, proceed as in forming on a front division.

Fig. 40. 41. S. 62. *When the Column of Half Squadrons forms Column of Squadrons.*

CAUTION !

THREE'S LEFT WHEEL !
&c.

MARCH !

Halt !
Three's wheel up !
March !
Halt ! Dress !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

CAUTION !

MARCH !

HALT ! DRESS !

A CAUTION is given that the rear half squadrons will form squadrons.—At the word THREE'S WHEEL ! &c. the rear half squadrons wheel (always to the pivot flank) and their leaders pass sideways, so as to be clear of of their rank.

At the word MARCH ! the leaders stand fast, the coverer of each conducts the division, and the leader of each, when it has cleared the standing division, gives the word to *Halt ! Wheel up !* &c. &c. when he arrives at the one he is to join.—The serrefiles, as soon as they have the opportunity, place themselves in rank behind their squadrons, at half a horse distance.

A CAUTION is given to close distance to the front.—The squadrons move at the word MARCH ! by the pivot flank, and each receives the word HALT ! DRESS ! when his squadron has closed.—The whole stand in close column of squadrons, with a distance of half a horse between ranks,

{ ranks, of a horse between
 { squadrons, and of two
 { horses between regiments.

*S. 63. When the close Column of Squadrons Fig. 37.
is to deploy into Line.*

1. On the Front Division.

The CAUTION of deployment is given, the line is prolonged, and attendant circumstances prepared.—The squadrons deploy, and arrive in line in the same manner, and by the same commands, as the half squadrons. The serrefiles in their places accompany the movements of their divisions.

2. On the Rear Division.

This deployment is also perfectly similar to that by Fig. 38. half squadrons.

3. On a Central Division.

The double operation of forming in a front and rear Fig. 39. division, is the same as for the half squadrons.

The column must be always well closed up before it deploys.—When it deploys on a front division, the three's wheel to the pivot flank, which becomes the leading one.—When it deploys on the rear division, the three's wheel from the pivot flank, which then becomes the following one.

The close column, when it forms line on a front, or rear division, may either be halted, or in motion to its flank.—From this situation of the flank march, it is that every regiment is required to begin the deploy, when forming in line with others, and therefore must be much practised by the regiment when single.—When the formation into line is made on a central division, it must always begin from the halt of the close column.

The regiment should also in exercise deploy on the front division, when in march, as it is the method by which parts of the line reform after being broken by an obstacle; and of lengthening out the flank of a line that may be in movement.

Although the quickest, most exact, and general method of deployment, requires that the regiment before deploying should stand perpendicular to the line on which it is to form; yet it may sometimes happen, that the immediate deployment of a column may be demanded on a *line oblique* to the one on which it then stands, and that circumstances do not permit of the previous operation of placing it perpendicular to that line.

S. 64. *Oblique Deployments of the close Column into Line.*

1. *On an oblique Line advanced.*

The front division is wheeled up into the new direction on its *reverse* flank, and the line is prolonged to (D.) The divisions of the column are wheeled to the hand it deploys to. The leaders of divisions then turn their horses so as themselves to take a direction parallel to the given one. The whole are put in march, and the rear of the divisions gradually get into the square direction of their heads, which proceed and form as usual. In this movement the heads of the

the divisions will be a little retired behind each other, the rear leaders will take great care not to close on each other, nor to the head which conducts them. Much precision is also required in justly timing the *Halt—wheel up*—of each division, which by that time ought to be moving perfectly parallel to the line of formation.

2. *On an oblique Line retired.*

Fig. 42. A.

The front division is wheeled upon its *pivot* flank into the new direction, and the line is prolonged to (D.) The same operation, though more difficult, takes place as when the line is advanced, and the rear divisions must take particular care to ease from and yield to the march of the front. The head division being advanced a few paces before it takes the oblique direction, will give a facility to the heads of the rear divisions in gradually gaining it.

Such deployment can hardly be required on any other than the front division of the close column. Particular attention is necessary to give every aid as to the points of forming, and to the heads of divisions moving as soon as possible parallel to and behind the line.

S. 65. *When the close Column halted is to form in Line in the Prolongation of its Flank, and on a front, a rear, or a central Division.*

Fig. 43.
A. B. C.

MARCH!

The caution of formation is given—The named division stands fast, the others MARCH forward in close column in the given line. Their pivot officers successively take wheeling distance from each other, beginning at the named one, and

Halt !
Halt !

Three's about Wheel !
 &c.
 MARCH !
Three's about Wheel !
 &c.

and successively give their word *Halt !* as each has acquired it.—When the whole is in open column, the line is formed by a wheel up to a flank. In this manner distances are begun to be taken from the rear.—But when the named division is a front or central one, the others that are behind it must wheel three's ABOUT, MARCH forward, take their distances, and *Front* successively.

The column may also be opened from any named division by the leading one only marching off, and each other successively following, as wheeling distance is acquired from the one preceding.—When the whole have opened, the general word HALT is given, or the column is allowed to proceed.

S. 66. When the Column closed to Half Distance, forms Line to its Front on any Division.

The line will be formed—Either by the deployments of the close column, or by the flank marches of the divisions of the open column, and their wheel up into line: or by a sharp incline of divisions into line.—In every case care must be taken to have a sufficiency of points established to insure the true direction of the line.

From column at quarter distance the line may be formed to any front, and on any division, by the movements of the close and open column.

The first formation of the line from column of march, is often made by the deployments of the close
 and

and half open column—but they seldom can be of use in changes of position of the line, when once formed: such changes are made in open column, or by diagonal movements of parts of the line.

CHANGES OF POSITION OF THE REGIMENT BY THE ECHELLON (or diagonal) MOVEMENT.

The Echellon position and movements are not only necessary and applicable to the immediate attacks and retreats of great bodies; but also to the previous *oblique* or direct changes of situation which a regiment or corps formed in line, may be obliged to make to its front or rear; or on a particular fixed division of the line. Echellon of march in changes of position.

The oblique changes are produced by the wheel less than the quarter circle, of divisions from line; which places them in the echellon situation, ready to move. How formed.
—The *direct* changes are produced by the perpendicular and successive march of divisions from line, to front or rear.

The march in the direct echellon (B) produces new parallel positions to front or rear—The march in echellon (C) when formed by the wheels of the divisions from line, produces new oblique positions to front or rear, and at the same time to the flank, according to the degree of wheel given to the echellon. Fig. 44.
The march in open column (A) produces new prolonged positions, to either flank. How applied.

The echellon of march necessary in making changes of situation, will be composed of half squadrons or divisions, and formed from line by the wheel of each forward on its own flank, to the hand to which it is to move, and such wheel must be less than the quarter circle, for in such case the body would be in open column.—To form the echellon of oblique march, the

Degree of
wheel into
Echellon.

the degree of wheel made up from line ought strictly to be such as will place the divisions perpendicular to their future points of march: but in practice generally, the *half, quarter, or eighth wheel* (of the quarter circle) each ordered according to circumstances, may suffice to attain the proposed end.

Echellon
Column.

The echellon may be considered as a column of a particular kind as well as the open column; they are easily converted into each other, by a new degree of wheel of each of their component divisions.

Fig. 46. A.
Fig. 45. A.

S. 67. *When a Regiment from Line wheels forward by Half Squadrons or Divisions, to either Flank into oblique Echellon, and halts.*

CAUTION! DIVISIONS
WILL MAKE AN EIGHTH
WHEEL TO THE RIGHT!

At the general CAUTION; that the divisions will wheel forward, as much as to place them perpendicular to their future lines of march; a person from the leading division of each squadron marks the wheeling flank of that division, according to the degree ordered, whether *half, quarter, or eighth wheel*.

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

At the word MARCH! each division wheels up, and they receive the word HALT! DRESS! to the standing flank, to which the leaders of divisions (as necessary) have shifted.

In

In this situation the flanks wheeled to remain in an exact line, (and also the wheeling flanks, if the divisions are of equal strength) but in proportion to the degree of wheel which has been made, will the perpendicular raised from the standing flank of each division cut within the division preceding it, till by the complete wheel of the quarter circle, all such perpendiculars coincide in one: and the distance from division to division is equal to the front of each preceding division, which was wheeled forward, and which by wheeling back would exactly again fill up that space.—Whenever, therefore, the directing flanks of an echellon are all in the same line, and each distant from its preceding one a space equal to the front of the preceding one, such echellon is in a situation, by wheeling back, to form in line to the flank, as in (S. 69); or to take a position forward, as in (S. 70, 71.)

When the movement is to be to the rear instead of the front—the regiment will wheel about by three's; wheel forward into echellons, in the above manner; and proceed as if the line was to its proper front.

S. 68. *When the Regiment in oblique Echellon, marches forward and halts; ready to form in such Direction as shall be required.* Fig. 45. A. Fig. 46. A.

MARCH!

{ The divisions standing thus parallel to each other, and their leaders being on the echellon flank (the one wheeled to)
 { — At the word MARCH! the whole move on at an equal pace, each flank on its own perpendicular line: each leader is now attentive to preserve the distance
 { he

HALT!

he marched off at from his preceding flank; and also his oblique covering in the line of pivots, which remain always parallel to the original line: this requires the greatest care, being an operation more difficult than moving in open column, where all the pivots cover each other in the line of movement.—These circumstances observed, the echellon may at any instant be ordered to HALT! and will then be in a situation to form up parallel or oblique to the line it quitted.

The Echellon can at no time march in any other direction, than in the one to which it stands perpendicular: except that an INCLINE of the whole divisions should be required from it.—During the march, the same great regulating circumstances that direct the open column, direct the echellon, viz. the preservation of distance from the preceding leading flank, and the diagonal lining or covering of all those flanks, at the same time that the perpendiculars of march are preserved by each division. Could the march in echellon be always executed with perfect accuracy, each flank leader covering a certain file of his preceding division at a certain distance would ensure exactness, but this alone is not to be trusted to, and is rather to be considered as an aid than as a rule.—If the leaders of the two head divisions do preserve an equal and steady pace, under the direction of the commanding officer, who keeps close on the flank of the first one, and gives such directions to the second as are necessary for preserving the parallelism of the march; those two will serve as a *base line* on which all the others should cover.—In this, as in every other case, the perfect perpendicular march of the first leader, in consequence of his own true personal position, and his attention solely given to this subject, and the equality of pace, is what will much determine the precision and justness of the whole.

The

The commanding officer of the regiment is with the leading echelon in march, and on coming into line; and the adjutant, or some appointed person, always marks the prolonged point towards the other flank, on which the divisions are successively corrected as they halt in the line.

*S. 69. When the Regiment having wheel-
ed from Line into oblique Echelon, has
marched and halted, and is to form back
into Line, parallel to the one it quitted.*

Fig. 45. B.

Fig. 46. B.

WHEEL BACK INTO LINE!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

A CAUTION is given that the divisions wheel back into line.—At the word MARCH! each reins back on its standing flank, and the word HALT! DRESS! is given when each squadron is nearly formed; the leaders of pivots and others having shifted so as to find themselves in their squadron places at the completion of the wheels.—If the ground does not admit of reining back, then the divisions WHEEL ABOUT by three's—WHEEL FORWARD:—again WHEEL ABOUT,—HALT, DRESS in line.

Fig. 47. S. 70. *When the Regiment in oblique Echellon has marched and halted, and is to form up, oblique to the Line it quitted.*

Fig. 47. B. 1. *If the formation is made forward; and that the*
 Fig. 45. C. *leading division wheels up the same portion of the quarter circle that it before wheeled from line into echellon: then the others without altering their situation, move on, and successively arrive in line, and dress up with it. In this manner does one or more regiments make their change of position on a flank or central division of the line.*

2. *If its wheel up exceeds that portion; the others wheel up one half of that excess, move on, and successively dress up with it.*

3. *If its wheel up is less than that portion: the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, after deducting one half of what the leading division has now wheeled forward; they then move on, and dress up with it.*

4. *If the formation is to be in the prolongation of the front division as it stands: the others wheel back one half of what they originally wheeled forward, then move on, and dress up with it.*

5. *If the leading division has to wheel back into the new position: the others wheel back (in addition to the one half of what they originally wheeled forward) half of what the leading division has now wheeled, move on, and dress up with it.*

All these specified wheelings are in order to make the divisions stand perpendicular to the lines on which they must march to their points of formation; which lines change in consequence of the position given by the leading division.

S. 71. *When a Regiment or Line is to change its Position on a fixed Flank, by throwing the other Flank forward or backward, and by the Echelon March of Divisions.*

1. *When a Flank is thrown forward.*

Fig. 47. B.

Fig. 46. B.

The new direction is ascertained by two persons placed beyond the flank, and the flank division is accurately wheeled into it.

DIVISIONS WHEEL, &c.
MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

MARCH!

The other similar divisions of the line are (each upon its inward flank) wheeled up *half* as much as the flank division wheeled, and thus stand in echelon, the pivot leaders placing themselves on the inward flank.

The whole, except the flank division, are then put in **MARCH**, each looking to its leader, who is on its inward flank, and thus advancing perpendicularly towards its point in the new line.

Before the leading division of each squadron has reached the line, a marker will move forward quickly to prolong it, and place himself rather beyond where his rear division is to come up; so that there shall be always at least *one* fixed object to correct upon, beyond each division, as it halts in line.

— *Shoulder forward!*

When the officer, conducting the second division, arrives within 20 or 25 paces of where he is to join the first division already placed, he gives a word, *Shoulder* (the outward one) *forward!* on which the man next to himself gradually turns his horse so as to arrive in the new line perfectly square in his own person; and the rest of his division (who till this instant have marched in their original perpendicular direction) conforming to him, and proportionally quickening their pace, arrive in full parallel front on the line; so as to have a very small movement to make at the word *Halt!* *Dress up!* which is given when his leading flank touches the flank of his preceding division; he instantly corrects the dressing of his division, and changes to his post in squadron.

— *Shoulder forward!*

Halt! Dress up!

In this manner division will come up after division, each following one observing to give the word — *Shoulder forward!* when the preceding one gets the word *Halt! Dress up!* and each, after correcting his division, resuming his post in squadron.

The exact formation of this oblique line, depends totally on the divisions having wheeled (only) one half of the angle which the new position makes with the

the old one; for should they at first wheel up the whole of that angle, they would then be marching parallel to that line, and arrive in it doubled behind each other; whereas, by having the other half of the wheel to complete when they come near to the new position, each moves in a perpendicular direction, and disengages the ground required by the succeeding one to form upon.

2. *When a Flank is thrown backward.* Fig. 47. B.

The direction is ascertained as before, and the flank division *placed* on it.

THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

{ The squadrons of the line go *about* ranks by three's.

DIVISIONS RIGHT QUARTER WHEEL!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

{ The divisions of squadrons make their *ordered degree* of wheel towards the placed division.

MARCH!

{ The divisions MARCH with their rear ranks in front, and form in line in the same manner as when changing position forward; except that the leader of each, when he arrives within 20 or 25 paces of the line will give his word — *Shoulder forward!* and thereby gradually bring up his division to be parallel to the line; he himself having stopt at the

— *Shoulder Forward!*

Halt !
Three's about Wheel !
March !
Halt ! Dress !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

line, will, as soon as his flank front rank man comes to the preceding formed rear rank man, give his words to *Halt ! Wheel about ! March ! Halt ! Dress ! March ! Halt ! Dress !* in the general line on the point which is prepared for him beyond the flank of his own squadron.

Very great activity is required from the leader in dressing up, or dressing back of his division, otherwise the point of appui (viz. his own farthest flank) will not be ready for the next leader, who is to arrive at and begin from it to perform the same operation, and this will particularly happen where the change of direction is inconsiderable.—In the successive dressing up or back of divisions, officers are to be careful always to line them so as not to obscure the marking persons, but to leave them open and distinct, so that the direction of the line may run horse's head to horse's head of the markers.

Fig. 48. 3. *When the Change is on a Central Division, one Flank being thrown forward and the other backward.*

The direction of the new line is ascertained, and the central division placed on it.

—THREE'S ABOUT WHEEL !
March !
Halt ! Dress !

{ The squadrons of
 the retiring wing go
 ABOUT by three's.

The

DIVISIONS TO THE RIGHT,
EIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The divisions of the squadrons of each wing make the *ordered degree* of wheel inwards and forwards, so as to face to the placed division.

MARCH!

The whole MARCH forward into line with the central division, the advancing wing dressing up, and the retiring wing again fronting and dressing in line, as already described in this section.

HALT!
DIVISIONS WHEEL BACK!
HALT! DRESS!

1. *During the oblique march of divisions to the front*, if they should suddenly be obliged to form line parallel to the one they quitted: the whole will HALT; the inward (or directing) flank of each stands fast, and each division WHEELS back to the line of its succeeding one.—When the march is resumed, each division WHEELS up its outward flank to its former position, and then the whole proceed.

TO THE RIGHT EIGHT WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!
MARCH!

2. *During*

HALT!
THREE'S ABOUT!—MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!
WHEEL UP INTO LINE!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

THREE'S ABOUT! &c.
TO THE RIGHT, EIGHT
WHEEL! &c.

2. *During the march to the rear*, if this operation is necessary.—The whole HALT, and come ABOUT, by three's. Each division WHEELS up its outward flank to the pivot preceding, and the line is thus formed.—When the march is to be resumed, the whole wheel ABOUT: each division WHEELS forward the ordered degree, as at first, and the whole proceed.

3. *If the change of position is a central one*, then both operations may take place at the same time; or one wing only may be required to halt, and form, while the other continues to pursue its proper formation in the new line.

The squareness of each division, and the perfect equality of pace during the movement, are what alone can produce the decided exactness which such operations indispensably require in their execution, and without which they must necessarily fail.

Fig. 47. 45. S. 72. *When the Regiment by the Echelon March changes Position to Front or Rear (and at the same Time towards a Flank,) on a distant Point, which is in the Intersection of the old and new Line.*

1. *If the change is to the front*.—Each division is wheeled up to the leading hand, half the degree (and no more) that would be required to place it parallel to the new position.—The whole move on in their perpen-

perpendicular direction, till the flank of the leading division arrives at the new line ; it then immediately wheels up the same degree that it before wheeled, and halts, dressed in the new direction.—The other divisions move on, and as they successively arrive near the new line, they advance their outward shoulders and halt, dress in it.

2. *If the change is made to the rear.*—The whole go ABOUT by three's, wheel into Echellon as above, and march on.—Each division again wheels ABOUT, and halts, dresses, when it has arrived in the new line.

This is the movement to be performed by each of the regiments of a considerable line (except one flank, or one central one) in most changes of position made on a point within the line.—For there can be but one regiment of a line which forms on a fixed division, all the others are evidently moveable forward or backward, each in proportion to its distance from the general center, and from the point where its leading flank is to rest on the new line.

S. 73. When from Line, the half Squadrons of a Regiment march off in Echellon successively and directly forward to the Front, and again form in Line, either to the Front or to the Flank.

1. *As long as the intention is to form again to that front.*—They may be retired at any named distance behind each other, and when the leading division halts, the others may move on, and dress in line with it. Fig. 49. A.

2. *But when the intention is to form in line to the flank.*—The whole will be ordered to HALT, or the divisions to take any named distance, and halt.—The directing Fig. 49. B.

directing flank of the leading division will be considered as the first point in the intended oblique line, and the particular direction meant to be given it, will be established by the placing of another point (a) beyond and before it—A marker from each division will quickly move out, and place themselves as pivots, lining on the first given points, and on each other; each also taking a distance from the one before him, equal to the front of the division which precedes him.

The rear divisions are then, by inclining to their directing hands, or by flank marching, moving up, and shoulders forward, MARCHED to their respective markers, and halted on the line.—Or the divisions, instead of forming in line, may be ordered to HALT in Echellon at their several markers, and parallel to their former front. The whole is then put in march forward, and preserving their relative situations, HALT, and WHEEL BACK into line, at some more advanced point.

D. D.

END OF PART FIRST.

PART SECOND.

OF THE LINE.

THE movements and manœuvres of a considerable line, are similar to, and derived from the same general principles as those of a single regiment; they will be compounded, varied, and applied according to circumstances, ground, and the intentions of the commanding officer; but their modes of execution remain unchangeable, and known to all.—The greater the body, the fewer and the more simple ought to be the manœuvres required of it.

The chief commander of a line must have several officers or other intelligent persons at his disposal to mark and determine such original points as become necessary in movement.

The great changes of situation of the line, are performed in open column of manœuvre.

The several general directions given for the single squadron and regiment, extend to each squadron and regiment that make part of a considerable body.

In open column, the leading division of each squadron preserves the interval distance from the one before in addition to that of its own front.—In column, at half or quarter distance, the divisions of the regiment from front to rear are uniformly at that distance from each other, and from regiment to regiment there is a distance equal to the front of the column.

Not

Not only the whole divisions of a squadron, or regiment, but the whole regiments of a line or column should MARCH off and HALT together.—To ensure this in the exercise of considerable bodies, signals of cannon are sometimes given; but in general, the quick circulation of verbal orders must be sufficient.

The same rules that direct the entry and march of one regiment in an alignement on which it is to form (S. 24. to 35.) apply with increased attention to those of the most considerable columns.—The point where the head of a column enters an alignement, and which is marked by a posted person; the point where the head of the leading squadron halts; the several markers who are placed in the true line; the prolongation of squadrons who may have formed up;—All these are so many marked points, on which the dressing of pivots or regiments can be regulated, either while marching in the line, or when each halts, and is to be corrected, in order to wheel up into line.

S. 74. General Changes of Position of a Line when formed.

Changes of position of a line, composed of several regiments, are according to circumstances effected by the *Echellon march*; the *flank march* of divisions, or the march of the regiments in *open column*—and points in the new line will always in due time be ascertained, at which the leading division of each regiment is to enter.

1. *When a considerable Line is to take up a new Position, parallel, or nearly so, to the old one, in Front or Rear of it, and facing either to, or from the old Line.* Fig. 56. E. D.

If in front of and facing as the old line. { It may be done (according as the new line outflanks the old line, connected with other circumstances) by the *march in line*—the *march in Echellon divisions*, the *flank march* by three's of divisions.

Fig. 13.
Fig. 14.

Or the line will break into open column to what-
ever hand the new position outflanks the old one.— Fig. 50.
The several regiments are disengaged, and put in march in separate columns; flank points of entry for each, are in the mean time preparing by the detached adjutants;—the heads of the columns arrive at their several adjutants, and form in line by prolonging it; flank march of divisions, or echellon marching, as may have been ordered.

If in front of and facing to the old line. { The regimental columns will, as before, enter and form on the line; within themselves they need not be inverted, but the right of the line will now be the left, nor can it well be avoided,—unless by countermarching the line before the movement, or by countermarching the first regiment, and then the line after the movement.

If in rear of, and facing as the old line. { The same identical operations, according to circumstances, are applied as when the position in front is taken, *facing as the old line*—the line or echellons after facing about; or the heads of regimental columns, after breaking, *March to the rear and front,*

O

{ front, or form in line, *facing as the old line.*

If in the rear of, and facing from the old line. { The regimental columns will lead to the rear, and enter and form on the new line, the other circumstances will take place, as when the line is in front of, and *facing to the old line.*

The echellon movements will not apply in this case, without inverting the ranks—or fronting and countermarching each squadron.

Fig. 56.
C. B.

2. *When a considerable Line is to take up a new Position, which (or whose Prolongation) intersects to the Right or Left of the old Line, and which faces either to or from the old Line.*

Fig. 50.

When the new line faces from the old line.

{ The line will break to which ever flank is nearest to the new position; —the heads of regimental columns will be separately conducted to their points in the new line; they will again enter into the general open column, and form in line by wheeling up.

Fig. 51.

Or—The line, after breaking to the flank, may continue its march in column, enter, and prolong the new line till its head halts at its point in that line.—The rear regiments that have not entered, will disengage their heads, and separately march off in column to their several points of entry on the new line, which are marked by their adjutants.

If the angle formed by the two lines, is not above the half of a right one, and that the flank of the new line is not very distant, this change may be made by the half wheel up of divisions, and their march in echellon

echellon, till they arrive and form up on the new line.

When the new line faces to the old line.

The line will break into open column towards the new position—the general column will enter the new line at its nearest point, prolong it if necessary, and when the head halts, the rear regiments will disengage, and march to their points of entry on the new line.

3. *When a considerable line has to take up a new Position, which (or the Prolongation of which) intersects the Body of the Line, and which faces to or from the old Line.* Fig. 56. F.

When the new line intersects the body of the old line, and faces to either flank.

The position will be changed, by the echellon march of divisions on the central point.

Or,—The division which is in the point of intersection, will place its pivot flank perpendicular to the new direction, and the line will break inwards, facing to that division.—The divisions of the central regiment, and of the one on each side of it, will by the flank march of their divisions, place themselves in column before and behind the standing division.—The other regiments will each be conducted in a separate column to its point of entry on the new line, where it will throw itself into the general column, and wheel up into line when ordered. Fig. 15. 25.

When the prolongation of

The line will break to the division which stands in the point of intersection.—Everything between that division and the flank which is to be farthest removed from the old line, will make

the new line intersects the body of the line, and faces to either flank.

make a change of position on the named division, and stand in open column on the new line, facing to the named division.—All the divisions that have so changed position, will each countermarch by files.—The line will then be prolonged, till the rear of the column arrives at its point.

Or,—The part of the line which is first thrown into the new direction, may so effect it, by the echellon march on the named fixed division.—The whole will then wheel into open column, and prolong the line till the rear arrives at its point.

Or,—The named division, being placed with its pivot perpendicular to the new direction, and fronting the way the line is to extend, the rest of the line breaks towards it, and inwards.—That division is then put in march, and is itself followed in column by that part of the line whose flank will naturally first come to its ground; the other part of the line moves on at the same time, in a separate column abreast of it, the whole being thus in a double column of divisions, as marched off from the center.—The *head*, and the column immediately behind it, *halts* when its following flank arrives at its proper point, but the other column proceeds, and throws itself into open column, in front of the named division:—The line is formed by the wheeling up of divisions.

Fig. 52.

S. 75. *Taking up Lines of March, or Formation.*

The general direction of any straight alignement on which troops are to form, is always determined before they enter on it, and the point in that line at which their head is to arrive must next be determined.—The markers of the line, as has been observed, always face
to,

to, and have their horses heads hanging over the line ; should any of them, from the unsteadiness of his horse, be obliged to dismount, in such case he will himself stand on and faced to the line ; and with the hand which is farthest from the column, he will hold his horse by the head ; and rather behind himself.

Before a column of march or manœuvre approaches the ground where it is to form, the commander will ascertain, as circumstances may determine him, the advanced and distant points at which the flanks of his line are to be placed, or which he intends to be in the prolongation of the line when formed.—If he enters his alignment at one of those determined points, he continues his march straight upon the posted intermediate persons, and the other point. But if he enters the alignment somewhere between them, it then becomes necessary to ascertain the spot where the direction of his march intersects the new alignment, for at that point the head of the column arrives in it.

When the head of the advancing column (B) approaches whatever part of the ground it ought to arrive upon, two officers (R, S,) are shewn the distant points of the alignment (P, T), and are sent forward to determine the intermediate point (S) at which the head of the column ought exactly to enter into the new direction.—They separate from each other 80 or 100 paces, go to the side to which the column is not to wheel ; and (R) immediately places himself in the line of (S, P) advanced before the head of the column.—They then both move on ; (R) always preserving (S) in a line with (P) ; and each describing the portion of a circle upon (P) as a center.—(S) looks to (R), and moves on while the point (T) continues to be advanced before him ; but the instant he has brought (R) in a line with (T) they both halt, and the four points are then in the same line—(R) remains fixed till (S) has shifted to the point (S) of intersection, and to enter at which the head of the column

Method of finding an intermediate point between two distant objects.
Fig. 53.

lumn is now approaching.—This done, (R) also moves, if necessary, to within 60 or 70 paces of (S); and (S, R) thus become a general base, which the appointed officers and adjutants immediately prolong for the march of the column, and in which they are assisted, and corrected by the known distant point.

An intermediate point is thus found, between two given, and perhaps inaccessible objects; and more than one column may in this manner ascertain their relative points of entry in the same line.—As it may be taken up at a gallop, no halt or stop of the column is to be apprehended.

Fig. 53.

When two bodies are in march to gain the same given point, the above method may most usefully be employed.—The column (B) and enemy (D) are both in march on the point (S).—The leader of (B) observes a distant point at (C), beyond and a-head of the enemy (D): if he can continue to keep this object open, and in front of the enemy, it is a certain sign that he approaches fastest to his wished for point: and if it appears as moving towards the rear of the enemy's march, it indicates the enemy's advantage, and the attempt must be given up in time.

S. 76. *When a considerable open Column enters, marches, and forms on a straight Alignement.*

The direction of the line is prepared—and the column enters and marches along the line (as in S. 27.)—The whole HALT at the same moment, on that word being loudly and rapidly repeated by each commanding officer of squadrons, who immediately examines and corrects his pivots, and the column is thus

thus prepared for the next order of wheeling up into line.

When the column halts in an alignement to form ; the various marked points in it which then exist, give the greatest facility to commanding officers instantly to correct their pivots if necessary, each on the next posted marker in his rear ; and which will also generally be made on the pivot of the front division of the succeeding squadron, in the same manner as divisions dress from the pivot of one to the pivot of the next ; for such correction should be merely internal, unless some inexcusable mistake has deranged the whole, and thrown the rear of the column out of its true direction.

If great accuracy is required in the movements of a single regiment in column, it is evident how much more essential it becomes in a more considerable one, where faults would operate in the proportion of its extent, if they are not immediately prevented, by the facility with which commanding officers can line and correct upon each other.

When a column halts to form : such persons as are then marking the direction, do not quit their posts till so ordered, or till the line, after forming and being dressed, is put in march.

In marching in an alignement, if the rear or front of a regiment has evidently deviated from the true line, the head of the succeeding one is not to follow its bad example, but must preserve the general given direction, into which the other is immediately to return. And no commander of a squadron or regiment when marching in an alignement is on any account to alter the rate of march, or partially to halt, and thereby to derange the whole column.

When part of a column is in low ground, or crossing a valley, its march can be directed and assisted by the rear points, at such times as the front points of march are not to be seen.

Fig. 51.

S. 77. When the Rear Regiments of a Column break from it in order to enter and form on an Alignement, in which the head ones have halted.

If a considerable open column has at any time partly wheeled into, and prolonged a new direction, and that the head being arrived at its point, the whole are ordered to HALT, with an intention of forming line in the new direction;—On the cessation of march, the remaining divisions of any regiment, whose head is now in the line, shall immediately, by flank marching, place themselves on it. But all the other regiments in its rear, shall break from the general column, and each MARCH quick and separate in individual column till it arrives at its adjutant, who, having expeditiously lined himself on the head objects of the new line, will be now placed at its *rear* point of entry; the regiments will then prolong the line, and as they must have successively arrived in it, each will halt when its head is at a due distance from the preceding regiment, its pivots will be corrected on its adjutant, and it will thus be ready to wheel up into line, when the next regiment shall have two squadrons, at least, correctly standing in column on the line.—Or the adjutants still marking the rear points to their regiments, if so ordered, the head of each may be conducted to its respective head point, which is easily ascertained from the preceding adjutant, and enter the line, (as in S. 41.)

A column marching at half or quarter distance may in the same manner take up its ground. The division that is to stop at the point of entry being ascertained, such part of the column as is before that division, will successively there enter the line, and prolong it at open distance. In the mean time such regiments as are behind that division, breaking from the general column will march to their respective points, and extend along the line.

S. 78.

S. 78. When a line of several Regiments Fig. 24.
thrown into open Column, changes Position on a fixed Flank Division.

The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, and the flank division placed perpendicular to it (S. 36, 37) the whole wheel into open column, facing to the standing division.—The flank regiment wheels its divisions to the flank, and marches them into column on the new line (S. 41.), but the head division of each other regiment wheels and marches off quick in separate column, to its adjutant, who marks its *rear* point in the new line; it there enters, prolongs, and wheels up each successively (S. 42.)—Or, if so ordered, each may enter at its *head* point. (S. 41.)

S. 79. When a line of several Regiments Fig. 25.
thrown into open Column, changes Position on a fixed central Division of any one Regiment.

The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, and the central division placed perpendicular to it (S. 38.) the whole line wheel up into open column, so as to stand faced to the central division.—The divisions of the central regiment proceed to *wheel by three's* to their flank, march, and place their pivot flanks in column on the new line, (S. 38.)—But the head division of each other regiment wheels, and marches quickly in separate column to which ever hand necessarily conducts it towards its proper *rear* point in the new line, which is marked by its adjutant, it there enters, prolongs, &c. as in the preceding section.

*In central changes of a regiment or line :—*The movements of the right wing, whether thrown forward or backward,

backward, are those of a column with the left in front, the rights being the pivot flanks: and the movements of the left wing are those of a column with the right in front, the lefts being the pivot flanks.—In changes of position on the right of a regiment or line, the movements are those of a column with the right in front.—In changes of position on the left of a regiment or line, the movements are those of a column with the left in front.

Fig.

S. 80. When a line of several Regiments thrown into open Column, changes Position on a moving central Division.

The direction of the new line being ascertained and prolonged, the named division (a) will be wheeled and placed with its pivot flank perpendicular to, and on the new direction, fronting the way the line is to extend; and if to the rear, it must therefore counter-march:—The line will then break by divisions so as to stand faced to the named division, (and if it breaks backwards it will stand to more advantage.)—That division (a) will now be put in march along the new direction, and be followed in double column by the remaining divisions of the central regiment, and covered by one of those columns; viz: by that whose flank, in prolonging the new line, will naturally first arrive at its proper ground, and which march with their pivots upon that line.—When the named division arrives at his new point (a, 2.) it will, together with those that are marching behind it, receive the word to HALT!—Such divisions of its regiment, which are to be in front of it, and are now marching by its side in column, and are separated from it by a distance of three or four paces, will move on, and by marching from their pivot flanks, will successively place themselves

selves in column before, and facing to it at a double wheeling distance.

The other regiments, which moved when the central one did, which in the mean time have been marching each in separate column, led by its inward flank division, and which have been to front or rear, relatively to the movements of the central regiment, approaching but not entering into its line of direction, except such as would naturally follow on the prolongation of the line: those regiments will, when the central one HALTS, march quickly towards their several adjutants, who have been detached to mark their rear points, and then enter, prolong, and wheel up into line as already directed.—In this movement, some of the regiments near the central one might form to advantage on their *head* point, by marching from their pivot flanks into line, and if so ordered they may do it accordingly.

If the named division is a flank one of a central regiment.—In that case the whole of that regiment will follow it in one column only, and the adjoining regiment will compose another column, and march abreast of it, separated by three or four paces, till the named regiment comes to its ground and halts; the adjoining regiment will then proceed, and by its divisions marching round from their pivot flanks, will (standing faced to the directing one) take its place in the general column, in order to form into line.

This movement of the given division is equivalent to the line marching from a central point either to front or rear, and from that situation forming away to the flanks: or to the whole line first marching forward or backward, and then making a central change on a fixed point. At the same time that it changes the front of a line, it carries the flanks to whatever point in that line it is meant they should rest at: It is the movement which a second line does make, in order to
comply

comply with a change of position made by the first line, on a fixed point.

Fig. 54.

S. 81. *When the Head of a considerable open Column in March, arrives at or near the Point where it is to begin to take an oblique Position, (B) facing to its then Rear, and at which Point its eighth, ninth, or any other named Squadron, is to be placed.*

In general, the column, after entering the new line, would continue its march in that direction till the named squadron arrived, and was halted at the point of entry; the squadrons and regiments that had not entered into the line would then break off from the old direction and gain the new one.—But if a line had wheeled into such a column, was marching parallel to an enemy's position, that its head had passed the enemy's flank point as far as was intended, and that the object was to take an oblique line, and attack that flank; in such situation it might be hazardous to allow the rear of the column which was destined to become the refused flank of the new line, to remain so long in its parallel direction, and it might be essential to draw it farther off from the enemy as soon as possible, especially if cannon could be brought up against it.

Suppose the column consists of five regiments, that the head of the fourth shall be placed at the point (d) of intersection.—The column moves on, and when the head of it arrives at the point (d) in the new line, the two, or any proportion of the leading regiments, may, by the successive wheeling of their divisions, enter and march along it in the ordinary manner.—But as soon as the leading division of the column does
enter

enter it, the third, fourth, and every other regiment, breaks off separately to the rear, and march quick in columns to gain the new line :—The third assembles in close column a little beyond the point of intersection (d), and behind the new line ; the fourth, entering at its adjutant, who marks its rear, forms in open column on the new line with its head at the point (d), and all the other rear regiments form also relatively in open column on the new line :—The two leading regiments having in the mean time prolonged the line, when it comes to the turn of the third (now in close column) it successively takes its distances, follows in open column, as also all the others, till the whole are ordered to halt, and the line to be formed by wheeling up.

The justness of this movement depends ;—on the points in the new direction being taken up quickly and with precision ;—on the previous determination that a certain regiment or squadron shall pass or halt at the point of intersection and entry,—and that every part of the column which is behind that squadron or regiment, shall throw itself into open column on the new line, behind the point of entry, ready to prolong, or to form the line, whenever it comes to their turn.

This movement will often take place in the change of position of a second line, and is performed by all those that are behind the division which is to stop where the old and new line intersects. At all times when the open column changes into a direction on which it is to form, that the division which is to be placed at the point of entry can be determined, and that there is no impropriety in other respects, the operation will be facilitated by making every thing behind that division gain the new line as quickly as possible, without waiting till the head of the column halts.

Fig. 54. C. *Suppose the column marching on a line parallel to an enemy's front, to have entered opposite one flank, and to be marching towards the other, as if meaning to form in parallel line; but that circumstances determine to form in oblique line (c), and attack the flank it has passed. The column will be halted when the rear has arrived at a determined point in the line: each division of the column will countermarch: the squadron that is to rest at the point of entry will be named: the whole will be put in motion.—Two or three of the leading regiments continuing their march, will, by the successive wheeling of their divisions, prolong the new direction. Such following ones as are to be before the point of intersection (a) will assemble close to it; such others as are to be behind it, will at once march off quickly and separately to their points of entry on the new line, and stand in open column upon it: In proportion as the head advances, the whole will extend along the line in open column, be halted and formed by wheeling up.*

Or under the before mentioned circumstances—The column when in march parallel to the enemy, may be stopt, at the time that a named squadron is opposite to his flank, and such part as is before that squadron will remain in column.—Whatever part is then behind the named squadron will, from the rear of the whole, countermarch by successive divisions, and from the named squadron will prolong a new direction oblique to the enemy's flank.—The squadron that is to rest at the point of entry will be given, and at the proper instant the divisions which have remained on the parallel line will each be ordered to countermarch, the regiments to assemble (as before) at the point of intersection, and in succession to join the general column, to form in line.—The part of the column which originally halts may be wheeled into line, and for some time remain faced to the enemy: in that case its divisions will have to wheel into column and not countermarch, when they are ordered to regain the new position.

A line formed parallel to an enemy changes situation in the above manner, by wheeling into open column, marching on to the point of intersection, and then taking up the new oblique situation.

If a column moving parallel to an enemy should stop and take up a new position on any point then within itself, such formation would be a central one, and made either on a fixed or moveable division.

S. 82. Formation in Line on detached Adjutants, from the Assembly in Column. Fig. 55.

If a column of several regiments has halted at half, quarter, or close distance, or that its regiments have assembled in contiguous columns, with small intervals betwixt them, and that they are to extend into a line which is at some distance from their then situation, on their respective adjutants, and facing either to the front or to the rear.

A regiment is named to be formed on, either a flank or central one of the new line, but it should be that one which, being placed at the point of appui, determines the position of the line, and therefore will commonly be a flank one.—Each adjutant always marks that flank of his regiment in the new line, at which its head is to enter, and where its rear division in column is to rest, and therefore it is that flank which is farthest from the point of appui; if his regiment is to march with its right in front, he marks its left, and if with the left in front, he marks its right.—It is therefore often necessary, that some or all of the regimental columns should separately countermarch (S. 46.) at their place of assembly, in order to move off with their proper flank in front, and thereby enter the new line at their respective adjutants.

Supposing, therefore, that the regiments are stand- Fig. 55.
 P 2 ing

ing in columns (*the right in front*) either in general column, or in contiguous ones.—If the position is to be taken from the *right* (B) of the new line, the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each successively marking his own left (a).—If to be taken from the *left* (D) the adjutants will from thence prolong it, each marking his own right (a); and the regiments, on separation from the general mass, will each countermarch, so as to arrive at its adjutant, a column with the left in front.—If to be taken from a *central* point (C), both flanks of that regiment must be marked; its adjutant and those of the regiments standing to its left, (or behind it, if in column) will mark each his own left, the adjutants of the regiments to its right (or before it, if in column) will mark each its own right, and those regiments will in consequence have to countermarch, so as to enter with their left in front, and in this manner will the whole stand in the new line, facing to the central point.

These circumstances determined and understood, all the adjutants are sent forward to the ground of the named regiment; the general direction of the line is ascertained by *base markers*; the flank point of entry is taken by the adjutant of the named regiment, and all the others from him, successively prolonging the line, mark their respective points of entry, each in so doing allowing ground for the front, and one interval of his regiment, from the last placed adjutant before him.—They are therefore expected to give ground quickly according to circumstances, both by their eye and by the pace of their horses.

In the mean time the whole are put in motion, and when sufficiently advanced, they HALT.—Such regiments as are to countermarch, are ordered so to do, and each then diverges to right or left, avoids crossing or interference, and marches quickly to its own point of entry, opening its divisions in the course of the march.—At that point, a momentary halt is made by each; its head division wheels into the line, the others successively follow it at open distances (S. 29. 42.)
till

till the word HALT is given on the arrival of the rear division at that point. The regiment thus standing in open column, and its pivots being corrected on the adjutant, is ready to wheel up into the line, which is in this manner separately entered by each regiment, whether it is to face to the front or to the rear of the march.

As the adjutant always marks the point where the rear division of his regimental column is to be placed, so the point where the head one is to rest will be of course easily known (and may be also marked in due time by another detached person) being at the distance of a proper squadron interval, and the front of a division from the preceding adjutant. The several adjutants, when placed, become so many points of march to the regiments that are prolonging the line.

Although unnecessary ground may seem to be gone over by the head divisions of some of the regiments, when they enter at their rear point, yet the rule that each of them shall enter the line, where its rear is to rest, is simple, general, and most readily corrects any mistakes that may be made: and, all circumstances considered, it is a quicker and surer manner of forming on the new position than if the regiments were to enter at their head, or at any central point. General Rule.

Although the adjutant does always mark the rear flank of his regimental column, yet as its head point, or any intermediate one, is afterwards easily ascertained, it can (when particularly so ordered) enter at either of those points, as well as at the rear one, for any of those operations places the whole in open column in the new line.

If the adjutants misjudge their points and distances, there will be false intervals in the line, which can only be remedied by the regiments marching on the line, to their proper distances, before they HALT.—If the regiment of *appui* is nearest to the new line, and the first to form on it, then, as all the others must enter

it successively, any inaccurate marking of the adjutants may be easily remedied by each marching up to its just distance from its preceding one before it HALTS. But if the regiment of *appui* is the last to enter the line, each must then HALT at the point marked by its adjutant, and no correction can be attempted till the regiment of *appui* has halted, and that the whole are in one general column.

Positions
taken to
front or
flanks.

When regiments assemble in line of contiguous close columns, they should be so placed, that no crossing or retardment of the after march may be occasioned. —If the new position to be taken faces the same way as the columns do, the regiments should stand in their natural order from right to left.—If the position to be taken faces to the rear of the column, the regiments should assemble in the reverse order, so that the right one shall be on the left; or if they otherwise assemble at first, they must countermarch in mass, in order to stand so.

Positions
taken to the
front or
flanks.

Fig. 56.

If positions are to be taken up to the front (E), or to the flanks (B. C.)—the circumstances already mentioned will determine from what point the general line will be given, and what flank of his regiment each adjutant shall mark.—The several regimental columns (having countermarched if necessary, and if standing in general column having disengaged into an echelon position) march towards their adjutants, taking care to diverge to that hand which does not cross the path of the leading regiment, or of each other; and when they approach the new line, whatever way it fronts, each is in a situation to enter it at its rear point, or, if particularly so ordered, at any other given point.

Positions
taken to the
rear.
Fig. 56.

If positions (D) are to be taken in the rear, each regiment will countermarch its divisions by files, so that the columns stand with their left in the front.—The regiments then, having the new position before them, will proceed accordingly.

As in changes of position, the arrival and formation of regiments in line is generally successive, the adjutant, if he is alert, will always have sufficient time to take up his ordered point of entry; as to the direction of the line, he can never fail in it, if he carefully prolongs such persons as he sees already placed in it, and such part of the troops as are formed on it.

The quickness and accuracy of all formations of the line, and of all changes from one position to another, depend totally on the intelligence of each commanding officer, who always conducts the leading division of his regiment to its point of entry in the new line; and also of the adjutant, who prolonging that line, marks the point of his last division, and is himself the object on which the pivots of the column, or the divisions of the echelon or column that successively come into line, are dressed upon.—When the adjutant marks the *rear* point for the entry of the regimental column, he must be accurate both in his distances and direction; when he marks it only as a point of dressing for divisions that successively arrive in line, the justness of direction is then the material object.

CLOSE COLUMN OF THE LINE.

The chief objects of the assembly of troops in close column have been already mentioned.

The close column, when exceeding twelve or fourteen squadrons, becomes unwieldy.—Where numbers permit that more than one column can be formed, the columns of march may be subdivided, when they come near the points of forming into line, be directed upon them, and then closed up.

In general, the regiments of a considerable column should stand a squadron in front, before they begin to deploy.

From

From close column, the whole, or any part of the body, may be ordered to extend into line, to either hand as circumstances may require.

The distances in close column have been already mentioned.

A close column of two, or even three regiments may occasionally deploy in the same manner as a single regiment does, and on any division; but in proportion to the extent of the column does the difficulty of execution increase, the formation may be inaccurate and defective, and the ground they have to move over is more likely to present rubs and embarrassments.—Therefore, when several regiments are halted in a close column of half squadrons or squadrons, according to the front on which they are to stand before deploying, they may first deploy in mass on any named one, and thus stand in contiguous line of regimental columns, with the distance of a half squadron interval between each, and with the whole serrefiles in the rear of each. From this situation, the whole will then deploy into line on any named division of any regiment.

Fig. 57.

S. 83. *When a Column of March of several Regiments forms close Column, and then extends into Line.*

FORM COLUMN OF
DIVISIONS!

CLOSE TO QUARTER
DISTANCE!

When it is found proper to shorten the column of march, and to assemble the troops—The column (if marching on a smaller front) forms into divisions, and the rear ones are ordered to close up to a certain distance. The leading division of the column either halts, or the rear ones quicken their march, and close up to quarter distance.

FORM

**FORM COLUMN OF
HALF SQUADRONS!**

{ Column of half squadrons is then formed, either from the halt, or on the move, and close up to quarter distance.

**MOVE ON TO CLOSE
COLUMN!**

{ When arrived near to where the line is to be formed, the head is halted parallel to the intended line, if its direction can then be ascertained, and the rear divisions move on to close column.

**FORM COLUMN OF
SQUADRONS!**

{ Column of squadrons is then formed, if it is so required (S. 62) and the whole advances to the line, which is now determined and given; the leading squadron halts on it, and the others successively halt in close column, at their proper deploying distances.

**MOVE ON TO CLOSE
COLUMN!**

**REGIMENTAL Co-
LUMNS WILL DEPLOY
ON THE THIRD RE-
GIMENT.**

{ The third or any other regiment is then named, as the one which is to give the ground on the line, and the adjutants take points in the line from it, for the inward flanks of their respective regiments.

**THE COLUMN BY
THREE'S, WHEEL
OUTWARDS!**

{ The third regiment stands fast, each other one in mass wheels ranks by three's to its proper flank.

MARCH!

{ Each marches to the flank without opening out.

**MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!**

{ When the third regiment is uncovered, it marches forward to its place in line, and halts.

HALT!

HALT!
FRONT!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The regiments that are marching to the flanks, as soon as they have acquired a half interval from each other, will successively HALT, FRONT, MARCH, and HALT, by the third regiment which is now on the line.

THE LINE WILL BE
FORMED ON THE
THIRD DIVISION
OF THE THIRD RE-
GIMENT.

The line being now prolonged by markers to both flanks—A CAUTION is given that the whole will deploy on any named division of any one regiment; for example on the third half squadron or squadron of the third regiment.

BY THREE'S, OUT-
WARDS, WHEEL!

The two right regiments, and the front divisions of the third, wheel ranks by three's to the right, and all the rest to the left.

MARCH!

The whole move quick to the flanks, except the named division, which advances into the alignement, and the rest of the third regiment proceeds to make a central formation on it. (S. 61.)

HALT!
Wheel up!
March!
Halt! Dress!
March!
Halt! Dress!

The other regiments continue their march, till each arrives at the point where its inward flank is to be placed; and when each does so, such flank division, whether it is a front or rear one, HALTS, FRONTS, and occupies its place in line, while the other divisions proceed, and make their

| their deployment upon it.—
 | In this manner the regiments
 | successively deploy (S. 61.)
 | observing the general atten-
 | tions already given.

The points of marching and forming upon must be well defined: the head divisions of regiments that move along the line must do it accurately, and by no means get before it; the ranks by three's must march correct, and the beginning of the deployment of each regiment must be well timed, otherwise the general line will be ill taken up.—The general line is that on which the regiment stood before the deployment began, and the several adjutants will carefully and quickly prolong it, each giving a point near to where the outward flank of his own regiment will extend.

The regimental columns WHEEL by three's, and separate from the general column, by a command given for the whole by the chief; but each column is halted, fronted, and brought up into line by its respective commanding officer.—In like manner, when the several columns are on their line of formation, they will WHEEL by three's, and MARCH by word of command from the chief; but each will be ordered to DEPLOY at the proper place, by its own commanding officer.

*When several regimental close columns stand arranged along side of each other, and are in concert to deploy into line, the named one of formation only can be required to form either on the front, a *central*, or the rear division; but each of the others necessarily form either on its front, or on its rear one, as the circumstances of situation demand.*

After the column of march has closed up to quarter distance, the leading regiment may, when thought proper, be at once directed to its point of halting, and the others may successively diverge from the column,

lumn, arrange themselves as before along side of it, and double up to column of half, or whole squadrons. The line of regimental columns is thus ready to deploy, or to advance, and then deploys as near the enemy as appears safe, in a parallel or in an oblique direction, which may be given by the previous placing of the several regimental columns in such oblique direction.

S. 84. *Oblique Deployments.*

Fig. 58. 42. The deployment of the close column into a line *oblique* to the one on which its head then stands, may in some situations be required, where circumstances do not permit of the previous operation of placing the column perpendicular to such line—as when a wing is to be lengthened out but refused, or an enemy's flank to be gained, by throwing forward one or more regiments which have advanced in close column behind the point of a wing: or when the nature of the ground on which the column stands demands a deployment that will give support to a flank, or preserve the advantage of a position.

Such deployments must be made by the troops, as standing in one column, and by the whole, as if one regiment, according to the mode prescribed for it; for they do not apply to regiments separated and standing in mass on the same line.—If more than one or two regiments take up an oblique line, it will require great attention in the commanders to preserve order, and to form with justness.—Such formations are required on the front division of the regiment only.—Whenever circumstances permit the column to be placed perpendicular to its line of formation, it must always be done: oblique formations are unavoidable exceptions.

S. 85. When several close Columns are formed from Parts of the same Line.

The parts of the line which are to compose each column are named; each regiment forms a close column on one of its own named divisions.—The several regimental close columns march by a flank, and place themselves before or behind the directing regiment of that general column to which they are to belong.

S. 86. If several close Columns are halted at accidental Distances, but with their Heads dressed, and are ordered to form in One Line. Fig. 59. 60.

At whatever distance the heads of the close columns are halted from each other, the separate regiments will move up into line, each column upon its own named regiment.—The point and division on which the whole are to form will be named; the whole will extend from it; the distances and commencement of movement will be taken from the named point, so that the outward regiments may move successively, as it becomes necessary to preserve their distances from the inward ones.—Or the adjutants taking their points from the given one of appui, the columns will in the meantime be previously so placed as not to cross, or interfere in the march; the regiments of each will then disengage, march, enter, and form on the line.

S. 87. If two Columns halted at open, half, or quarter Distance, are to exchange Places.

The divisions of each will wheel inwards by three's or two's, and march.—When they have approached each other, one of them halts, the other continues in march and passes through the intervals of the halted one.—Both columns then move on until they arrive, halt, and front on the ground which each other occupied, and which has been properly marked and preserved for them: During this flank march, the heads of the divisions are kept nearly dressed, and are regulated in each column by the two head divisions.—This operation is necessary when a line is to be taken up, and formed on, facing the reverse way to what the columns then do; and if such line is in the rear of the columns, they also countermarch their divisions by files, in order to enter and prolong it.—This mode of columns exchanging situation, which is equivalent to the passage of lines, may be required on several occasions.

Fig. 61.

S. 88. When Two Columns are to form in Line in any given Position.

Points are prepared—The columns by marching, countermarching, exchange of situation by three's, or by whatever other operation is necessary, are brought up with their heads to the given points in the new line. The columns close up: the regiments disengage, place themselves on the new line; the division or divisions of formation are named, so as to fill up the interval between the columns, and the whole relatively deploy into line.—Or, points being prepared by the several adjutants, the regiments will disengage at a due distance, march on their respective points, and form in line.

S. 89.

S. 89. *If there are Two Columns, composed each of Parts of Two Lines, which are to form.* Fig. 60.

The regiments of the second line will halt at a proper distance from the first, and deploy or form in line, in the same manner as the first one does—or, if the first line is to form facing to the rear, the second one will have to proceed, and to pass it, in order to arrive at its relative situation.

If two lines march off to the front, in two, three, or four columns, each composed of part of the two lines: advance at certain distances from each other to where their heads enter on two given parallel lines: wheel their heads to a flank into, and prolong those lines to any extent.—Then as the columns of each line have of course joined each other, the whole will be moving in two columns of lines, ready to form by a wheel up to the flanks when the object of the movement is accomplished, which probably may be the outflanking or turning the flank of an enemy.

If two lines marching in columns of lines to a flank; are unexpectedly obliged to make front to that flank: Then the new lines will be composed each of part of the old ones, by their moving up to right and left, to form to the leading divisions of the columns, and the interval between the columns will, in the course of the operation, be filled up by the necessary number of divisions from each column, the heads of which will have wheeled and marched towards each other for that purpose.

ECHELLON OF THE LINE.

Echellon
movements
of a great
corps.

The echellon movements of a great corps, place it in an advantageous situation; to disconcert an enemy; to make a partial attack, or a gradual retreat. Different previous manœuvres ought always to have diverted the attention of an enemy, and prevented him from being certain where the attack is to be made. It may be formed from the center, or from either of the wings reinforced: If successful the divisions move up into line to improve the advantage: If repulsed, they are in a good situation to protect the retreat. In advancing the several bodies move independent, act freely, and are ready to assist. In retiring, they fall gradually back on each other, and thereby give mutual aid and support.

Strength of
echellons.

The echellons of a line are, according to its strength, of three, four, or five squadrons each—Though their flanks seem multiplied, they are not exposed, as they cover each other.

Oblique
march.

Echellons seen at a distance appear as if a full line: being short and independent lines, they can the easier march obliquely to outwing an enemy, or to preserve the points of appui to a wing; and such movement may not be perceptible to an enemy.

Echellon
formed on
any divi-
sion.

The echellon may be formed direct from line, on a flank or any central division, either marching or halted, to front or rear.

Partial for-
mation in
echellon.

The whole, or only part of a line may be thrown into echellon, and that either to the front or rear.—In the first case to gain the flank of an enemy: In the second to refuse or cover one's own flank.

Directing
point.

When the echellon is unconnected with a line, the advanced flank or division regulates all its movements: When attached to a line, it must depend on the motions of that line.

The same general principles of movement and formation apply to all echellons similarly formed, however great or small they may be, and whether they are acting to the front or rear.

Echellons move forward by their directing flank, which is always the one advanced from, or wheeled to, Directing flank.

By at any time halting the echellon, the leading division may be changed, and instead of one flank the other may be made the advanced one; or instead of an echellon formed from a flank, it may be converted into an echellon formed from a center; this is effected on any named division by the relative and perpendicular movements of the others to the front or rear: In this operation, when the echellon is a direct one, the divisions of it will exactly pass each other's flank.

S. 90. When a considerable Line changes to an oblique Position, by the Echellon March of Half Squadrons.

If the new line intersects any part of the old line.—The regiment so intersected will make its change of position on that fixed point, flank, or central, (S. 71.) and all the others will march in echellon, whether forward or backward to their respective points in the new line, before they successively begin to form in it. (S. 72.) Fig. 47.

If the new line intersects the prolongation of the old line.—A point will be given in the new line where the leading flank is to be placed.—The leading division will be wheeled so that it may move perpendicular on that point, and all the other divisions of the line will wheel up the same degree: The whole will march up in echellon, regarding their leading flank as a moveable center; and as each regiment arrives at the new line it will halt, and form in it by a new interior arrangement. (S. 70.) Fig. 45.

In these changes of position, the whole echellons of a line are situated, and may be considered relatively the same as the half squadrons or echellons of a regiment: The whole move together and connected; each regiment arrives successively at its point in the new line, and each, as soon as it arrives, begins its formation on it.—So that whether it is the regiment or line which so changes, the march is made with precision, and each echellon forms up in succession.

Fig. 46.

S. 91. When the Line marches obliquely outwards in Echellon of Half Squadrons, and changes Position inwards to move upon a Flank which it has gained.

The line formed and halted marches to the flank in echellon of half squadrons, (S. 68.) forms in line parallel to the one it quitted, (S. 69.) and if it then instantly makes an oblique change of position, (S. 71.) it will be placed in a situation to march forward with the greatest advantage on the weak point of the enemy;—or according to the distance from the point of attack; the line, after resuming its parallel situation, will move forward a given space, then make its oblique change of situation, and again march on in the new direction it has acquired on the enemy's flank.

Fig. 62. 63.

S. 92. When from Line parallel to an Enemy considerable Echellons advance from a Flank to the Front.

The divisions of the line, and the distance of echellons being announced; the flank echellon moves on:
When

When it has acquired the given distance, the next one follows: and thus successively till the whole is in motion: The whole halt when the leading echellon halts.

Two under officers from each following echellon will Fig. 62. march in the line of each preceding one, so as to stop when the preceding one does, in its just prolongation and at the points at which the flanks of their echellon is to be halted, when it is required to move up into line, and whose position in such line must be thereby easily and accurately determined. When such detached under-officers stop, each squadron will send forward to mark its inward flank in the prolonged line.

It depends alone on the conductor of the leading echellon when it halts, to give it such a direction, that its prolongation shall pass before the enemy's front, and not be exposed to an enfilade.

Notwithstanding every measure taken to obtain exact parallel lines, the following echellons must, and on the march will be guided by and conform to the leading one: Their great object is, to preserve in moving on their parallel and relative situations, their ordered distances, and proper flank interval.—In this they are to act in the same manner as when advancing in line; and having the leading echellon to guide them, together with the assistance of the officers, who attend to their movements, and prevent their outward flanks from being thrown too forward, they may execute with justness this important manœuvre.

When large echellons, having marched forward are Fig. 63. to wheel up to their advanced flank, and form in line oblique to the one from which they departed.—The outward flanks, which are to be the standing ones, must be halted as soon as each touches the line on which the formation is to be made: And for this purpose a line must be ready marked by advanced persons (prolonged from the leading echellon) on which such

such flank is to halt, and on no account to pass it.— Each echellon forms in line by a change of position on that flank: but if there is not a previous arrangement of distances, and a degree of doubling of each, in proportion to the intended obliquity of the line, there will be increased intervals between the echellons.

Fig. 64.

S. 93. When a Line formed on and beyond an Enemy's Flank, moves to the Attack in Echellon.

The echellon, which is then placed perpendicular to the point of the enemy's flank, will move on, the rest will successively follow it from each hand, and at their prescribed distance: The echellons on one flank will be refused, and on the other they will advance beyond the leading one to envelope the enemy.

Fig. 66.

S. 94. When a Line formed in front of, and obliquely to the Enemy, moves forward from a Flank to the Attack in Echellon parallel to the Enemy.

The number of echellons, and strength of each, being ascertained and announced, the echellons will naturally be formed to and led by the advanced flank.—Great care must be taken in placing the flank directing half squadron of each echellon, to which its other component parts form, as in (S. 71.)—The echellons thus formed will be doubled behind each other, in proportion to the degree of wheel made, and were they to move directly forward to form with the leading one, a portion of each would thereby be cut off, and the general extent of the line reduced; this

is to be remedied either by an early attention to taking the necessary and greater intervals than usual, before forming the oblique line; or before the whole advances, making the echellons take ground to the flanks, and place themselves in their proper relative situations, as they would be when formed from parallel line—Supposing this done, the whole may move on, either from the advanced or retired flank, and when proper, march up into parallel line: should this not be done, part of each echellon would of course be excluded on forming the general line, and must remain behind it.

Whether the original line is formed parallel or oblique to the enemy's front, the echellons before marching are always to be placed perpendicular to the line on which they are to move.—From this situation a diagonal march on the enemy's flank may be made, and in such case large echellons must be broken into half squadrons; but it is an operation difficult in the execution, that would require much circumspection, and if attempted too near would be very dangerous, as the flank thrown up is exposed to an enemy's enfilade.

This attack can be at once formed from a column Fig. 65. of march, or the open column of a line which is prolonging a direction upon, and oblique to that of the enemy.—The column will halt, wheel into line, and, without any sensible pause, the leading flank half squadron of each echellon will wheel up parallel to the enemy, the other divisions of the line will each wheel up half that space, and move on into their several echellons: the whole will then be ready to advance, led by any named echellon.

The attacks of considerable bodies are almost always conducted on the principles of the echellon.—There are few situations where the whole could act at the same

same time, or where it would be prudent or eligible so to do: they are therefore made by fractions of a line, well supported and reinforced.

S. 95. *With respect to the Enemy, and the intended Movement, the Echelon Position may be taken from the* } *Parallel oblique Column* } *Position.*

If from the line parallel to the enemy.—It is previously divided into the several echellons which are to compose it; and the distance at which they are to remain behind each other is announced.—The reinforced flank or center which is to attack, is then ordered to advance; each echellon of three or more squadrons moves on, when the preceding one has gained the ordered distance of (perhaps 100) paces, and thus being regulated by the head, act according to the event of the attack.

Fig. 65. 66. *If from the line oblique to the enemy.*—This position having been taken from the columns of march, or in the course of advancing in line; and the divisions of the echellons being ascertained, they are formed by wheeling up parallel to the enemy; and to each other; the advanced or retired wing may then proceed to the attack, and supported by the others, will act according to circumstances. One may attack on any degree of obliquity, and by absolutely refusing one wing, place it in a situation the more readily to protect a retreat, should it be necessary, and which will be greatly strengthened, if a point of appui can be given to such refused wing.

If

If from columns halted perpendicular, or nearly so, to the enemy.—Their heads are halted at given relative points, and given distances; the attacking bodies form in one or more lines, the others extend to the flank in echellon, being separated perpendicularly, a space equal to the distances they halted at in their several columns: this space is augmented if necessary, when the whole move on, and lines of three or more squadrons each are thus formed.—From the echellon position, by flank marching, the order of column may again be resumed.

Fig. 67. 68.

The advanced echellon being arrived at its object, the attack is given, and the others attend the event.—If it succeeds, they move up into line to perfect it.—If it fails, each falling back on each is strengthened, and supported every instant of the retreat; this will generally be done by the echellons in the course of retiring, at the same time making a gradual wheel backwards on the posted flank of the corps, which one must conclude is supported with artillery, to check and enfilade an advancing enemy.

The second line, when there is one, follows in every thing the echellon movements of the first:—The regiments make the same degree of wheel, preserve the same relative position, and serve as a support to the first; the attack of the second line moves on therefore at the same time with that which it is to support.—The echellons of one or more lines are generally retired from one hundred to one hundred and fifty paces, each behind the one preceding of its own line.—When necessary to relieve them, the echellons of the first line may retire through those of the second.

Where a line is passing a defilé to the front, and from or near its center.—After passing, it may first form at the head of the defilé in the echellon position; the

the several divisions are then ready to move up into line, or by wheels towards the flanks, to form in oblique lines, and protect those flanks.—It may also in the same manner pass a *defilé* to the rear, retiring from the flanks by echelon, and then from the outward flanks of echelon, towards the rear, while the center protects the movement.

The line, for convenience, may occasionally advance in echelon of squadrons.—Each being retired behind the rear rank of its preceding one, so that the front rank of one dresses with the *serrefile* rank of the other.—The squadron of direction is the leading one, which must march with the greatest exactness, and when so ordered, the whole can in an instant move up into line, aided by the advanced marker of their inward flank.

Fig. 69.

A line (B) formed parallel or oblique to the enemy (E), threatens and commences an echelon movement from its left; but on the arrival of the left at a favourable point of appui (C), the whole halt, and an echelon movement from the right (which has been strengthened) takes place: the attack (D) having been given up, or having failed, the whole fall back in echelon F, on the left, which remains posted, and supported with cannon.—From this situation, an oblique line (G), is taken to the left, and from the left by each adjutant marking his own right in the prolonged line: the regiments successively again retire, and then break into column, the left in front, march behind each other, and commence this march, so that each at the same time enters the oblique line at its adjutant, prolongs it, and wheels up and forms.—This position (G) may be quitted, by throwing back the left of the line, retiring by alternate lines, or in such other manner as the circumstances of the moment may require.

S. 96. *When the Line advances.*

A line that is to advance, must be beforehand accurately formed and dressed, to enable it to move in a direction perpendicular to its front, otherwise a floating, opening out, or closing in of its parts, will take place, till such perpendicular march is attained.

THE LINE WILL
ADVANCE !

THE LINE WILL ADVANCE (by a named squadron) is a caution.—The officer commanding such squadron, quickly determines by his eye the exact perpendicular to the front of the line which he is to march upon, and till he is satisfied the direction of it is just, he is not to look out for objects in it.—Every other squadron remains prepared.

Any person who means to indicate the direction of a line which is to be pursued (and the prolongation of which is not upon some strong object) to another person, will do it in the most ready manner, by himself riding some small distance forward in the intended direction, and desiring the person who has remained at a given point to take such line over his head, and of course to remark his points of marching in it.

MARCH !

At the word MARCH ! instantly repeated to each squadron, the whole move ; each squadron by its center, and each squadron leader attentive to, and preserving his pace, line, and distance, from his directing hand.—If the whole move uniformly and straight forward, the line will be firm and steady.—If any inaccuracy arises, it must be instantly remedied by the inclining, moving up,

R

or

or keeping back of particular squadrons, and such necessary alterations must be made, by firm command and judicious execution, so as not to affect the general line.—The attention of commanding officers is extended to the general line, and they are to avoid partaking of the errors of any portion of it that is evidently in the wrong; but on the contrary, to consider such part as if deranged by some occasional obstacle, and to preserve their own just relative position with respect to the directing squadron.

HALT!

If the line marches just, it will halt justly, the whole at the same instant of the command, HALT!—If this is not the case, the halt of squadrons must be to a degree successive; at any rate the squadrons must halt in the general line.

All alterations of pace must be made in a firm and decided manner, and by the whole at the same instant, in consequence of the order repeated by squadron leaders.

Inclining the line, is a very difficult, but useful, movement.—The same directions respect the whole line that have been given for the single squadron. (S. 10.) The leading flank officers of each must be very careful to calculate their relative distance from the standard preceding them, and to preserve the general parallelism of the line.—This is an operation to be required of the line when advancing; and its justness most particularly depends on the whole commencing its execution at the same instant; from circumstances of situation, it will generally be evident to which hand the incline will be required.

RIGHT INCLINE! { At the word, RIGHT IN-
[CLINE! rapidly repeated to
each

each squadron—The whole turn their horses heads to the right, and incline at the pace ordered. (If the line is halted,) then the command to incline is a caution, and at the word MARCH! the whole move.

FRONT!

When the line has inclined about two hundred yards, the word FRONT! may be given.—The whole return to the former direction, and conform as to intervals, and dressing, to the squadron of direction.—When time has been given to adjust the line, the incline may be repeated as often as is necessary, to gain the ground wished for to the flanks.—The fronting every two hundred yards is prescribed to prevent the breaking or falling into file of the line, to which it would certainly be liable, if much greater space was at once attempted to be inclined over.

As a certainty of direction to the following squadrons—The angle of inclination will always be 34° , with respect to the former direction of the line.

With a front of nine or ten squadrons, the incline may be executed at a trot, but hardly at a gallop—With a greater front it will be very difficult to preserve the line and distances of squadrons.—If the ground is at all embarrassed, the line cannot incline, but must effect its change of situation by some of the other prescribed modes.

CHANGE DIRECTION
TO THE RIGHT!

LEFT SHOULDERS
FORWARD!

FORWARD!

RIGHT WHEEL!
FORWARD!

MARCH!

LEFT SHOULDER
FORWARD!

FORWARD!

When the line is advancing—

If circumstances make it necessary, that a small change should be made in its direction towards either flank, a caution is circulated: CHANGE OF DIRECTION TO THE RIGHT!

—The squadron of direction, by the word, LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD! gradually wheels to the right as much as is necessary to bring it perpendicular to its new points of march; the squadrons on the left of it, each WHEELS to the right, half as much as the squadron of direction has done, and move up successively and briskly into line with it: the squadrons on the right of it having all been ordered to HALT! when that of direction began its change, again successively move, when the new front of the line cuts the right of each respectively, they then, by the LEFT SHOULDERS FORWARD! and giving way to the right, conform to the new direction.

No change made in this manner should exceed one thirty-second part of the circle at one time; but after the line is settled in the new direction, another change, if necessary, may be made.——In this operation, the pace of the squadron of direction cannot exceed a walk, otherwise much inaccuracy and hurry is to be apprehended. Such change will certainly be made with more precision from the HALT of the line, nor will time thereby be lost; in this case, all the squadrons on the left would move up into line with the placed

placed one of direction ; those on the right would remain halted, and on the advance of the formed part of the line, conform in the same manner as before to it.

If the line is to wheel to a flank, with an uniform front—The distances are preserved from the standing flank squadron which comes gradually about, and the pace is taken from the outward wheeling squadron.—The leaders of squadrons are therefore to give their attention to one another, and to those objects of distance, pace, and line, so that at any instant of the wheel, the line might be halted, and would be dressed.

If the line is to wheel on a central point.—One wing would go about by three's. Each wing would make its wheel on that point as a flank one, the wing properly fronted, giving the line and pace to the other. When the whole was halted, the proper front would be taken by the faced wing.

In general, wheels of the line are best accomplished by changes of position made on a flank or central division. (S. 71.)

A line at once makes front to its rear—By the wheeling or countermarch of each squadron—Or by the countermarch of the whole line. (S. 53.)

S. 97. *When the Line retires.*

The necessity of its being previously and correctly dressed, is full as essential as when it is to advance; if that preliminary is not taken care of, its movements will be disordered in proportion to its extent.

THE LINE WILL
RETIRE!

THE LINE WILL RETIRE, is a Caution—On which preparation is made in the same manner as on advancing; the officer who leads the directing squadron, immediately ascertains his point of march, and each squadron has an officer (not the commanding one) placed behind its center, ready to lead to the rear.

THREE'S ABOUT!

RANKS BY THREE'S RIGHT ABOUT!—MARCH! on which the ranks and serrefiles wheel about, and the squadrons remain ready for the general word.

MARCH!

MARCH!—The line retires in the same manner as it advances, and the commanding officers of squadrons, being in the rear of the standards (each of his own) can by their eye and directions, give occasional aid.

HALT!

HALT!—Is the pause of a moment.

THREE'S ABOUT!
MARCH!

RANKS BY THREE'S, RIGHT ABOUT! MARCH!

HALT! DRESS!

HALT! DRESS!—By the standards.

If any farther dressing of the line is necessary, it is ordered by the commander as already directed.

The line is never to remain halted an instant after facing to the rear, but is immediately to march on.—And when it halts, it is immediately to FRONT, and and then to DRESS.

When

When the regiment or line is marching either to front or rear, the partial obstacles that present themselves will be passed by the formation, march and deployment of the close column.—Such parts as are not interrupted still move on in front; such parts as are interrupted, double by divisions as ordered, behind an adjoining flank, or flanks, and in this manner follow in close column in their natural order.—As the ground opens they successively deploy and again perfect the line.—The columns are always behind the line and march closed up.—The formed part of the regiments, whether advancing or retiring, continues to move on at the ordinary pace, and in proportion as the obstacles increase or diminish will be formed, or column parts of the line increase or diminish. Plate 10.
Fig. 79.

In general the columns formed, will be of divisions or subdivisions of squadrons. The first that is obliged to double, will be directed to which hand by the commanding officer of the regiment; the others, as they successively double, will in consequence place themselves behind it, and behind each other, and the hand first doubled to will be that which presents the opening most favourable to the subsequent march and formation, and which the commanding officer will always hold in view, and order accordingly.—The interrupted body will double to one or both flanks according to circumstances and orders. Obstacles that impede a flank, will occasion a single column to be formed from the flank towards the center—Obstacles that impede the center, or a central part of a body, will if considerable, occasion two columns to be formed from the center towards the flanks.—The columns will follow a flank of such part of the line as is not impeded; and either in doubling into column, or extending into line, the rear divisions will conform to the movements of their then leading one.—No part less than the front of the column doubles or moves up, and when half or more of a regiment must be thrown into a column, it will be ordered by divisions of squadrons.

When

When the obstacle presents a considerable front parallel to the line.—The part impeded will all at once be ordered to double behind such one or two divisions as clear them of the obstacle.

When a point of an obstacle is presented to the line, and that it continues to increase.—The doubling is then successive, beginning with the division that is first interrupted, and continuing as it becomes necessary, till the column can advance in clear ground.

When the obstacle is passed, or diminished, and that the line increases.—If it is of such a nature as to permit of the complete extension at once into line: the whole column performs it by the commands and deployments of the close column of the front division, which then makes part of the line.—But when the obstacle diminishes by degrees only: then the divisions of the column must come up into line successively as the ground opens; and the remainder of the column must shift gradually towards the obstacle, in the same manner that it before shifted from it in increasing.

The commanding officer of the regiment himself must, as much as possible, order the doubling of the divisions, and their moving up into line; and particularly when any considerable part of the regiment is obliged to double into one column.—But if there are several doublings in the regiment at the same time, he can only direct the most considerable one, and the others must be ordered by their several leaders of squadrons.

These movements are all made on parallel and perpendicular, not oblique lines; and the progress which the formed part of the line is constantly making, shews that no time must be lost either in giving or executing the words of command, and that the divisions of the column must be well dressed up, and its movements quick, firm, but in perfect order.—The divisions of the column form successively into line as the obstacles permit them, or again double so as to conform

conform to the shape of the ground, which must always be filled up.—The march of the uninterrupted part of the line must be steady and exact, and the openings made must be carefully preserved from the center, while it continues to direct, or from whatever point does so, while the center is impeded: the columns depend on the formed parts of the regiment to which they are attached and are independent of each other.

Whether the regiment is advancing or retiring, the same operations take place, and the columns in both cases are behind the formed part of the line.—In retiring the rear rank leads.

When a line is advancing, it may also under certain circumstances pass such obstacles as present themselves, by ranks by three's, or by file.—In such case, the interrupted division or divisions will be ordered to break to one or both flanks, *ranks by three's*, and closely to follow such parts of the line as are not broken: this will increase as the obstacle increases; but as it diminishes, the three's will successively and quickly move up to their proper place till the whole are again formed, and during this operation the leading three's will always remain attached to the flank of the part that is in line.—The same rules that direct the doubling in column, direct the doubling *ranks by three's*, which may be applied to one or two squadrons; but if a longer front is interrupted, the doublings should then be made by divisions or subdivisions.—Where the obstacles are of small extent, but frequently occurring, this mode of *ranks by three's* is the readiest that can be applied in advancing; but in retiring it is less advantageous if the enemy are at hand to press upon the regiment; and therefore the passing by column is to be looked upon as the general method.

In plate 12, fig. 79—the position A. is a regiment and part of two others formed in line; they advance meeting with obstacles—B. three divisions of the left
of

of the regiment have doubled—C. one division of the right has also doubled—D. a central obstacle now occurring, three divisions of the right and one of the center, also two of the left and three of the center, have doubled—F. the whole divisions have moved into line, except three of the left which are in column.—G. the three divisions of the left remain in column, and two on the right, and three at the center have again doubled—H. the whole having arrived on open ground, have moved up into line, except one division on the right.

If the regiment A. instead of advancing in front, is supposed to have faced to the right about, and to be retreating, the positions of the divisions in column will be the same as above, they performing their movements with their rear ranks in front.

The positions I, K, L, M. show the passage of obstacles by the impeded parts filing or marching *ranks by three's* round them.—At N. the line is again completed—O, P. shew the passage of a wood, by the filing, or ranks by two's, or ranks by three's of a squadron.—At Q. all obstacles are passed.—The situation of part of the adjoining regiments also appears during this march.

S. 98. *Chequered Retreat of the Line.*

All manœuvres of a corps retiring, are infinitely more difficult to be performed with order, than those in advancing.—They must be more or less accomplished by chequered movements: one body by its numbers, or position, facing and protecting the retreat of another; and if the enemy presses hard, the whole must probably front in time, and await him; as the ground narrows or favours, different parts of the corps must double; mouths of defiles and advantageous posts must be possessed; by degrees, the different bodies must diminish their front, and throw themselves

selves into column of march, when it can be done with safety.

If a line with reserves, finds it necessary to retire in face of an enemy; the alternate squadrons and reserves will retire two or three hundred paces, and then front,—The other squadrons will then retire, and when they join the first, the reserves will again march, and front at like distances; the reserves always leading the retreat. This will continue, till it is proper or safe to break into column of march, and the skirmishers of the whole will cover the front of the retiring line.

Two lines will generally make their retreat by passing alternately through each other—Or they may retire by the chequered movement of each line.



S. 99. When the Line retires by alternate Squadrons, or Half Squadrons, in Two Lines. Fig. 70.

The line is told off by alternate, right and left squadrons or half squadrons, and one of direction for each line, (being two that are contiguous) are announced.—One division of the line (the right's) is ordered to stand fast, the left's go about by three's.—The retiring part marches a given distance, and when ordered, halts and fronts; this serves for a signal to the advanced part of the line to begin its retreat in the same manner, each body through its proper interval, and when ordered to halt and front.—The alternate retreat is thus continued either at a walk or a trot, till the line has attained some new situation, being covered by such skirmishers or light troops, as were originally advanced in the front for that purpose, and who gradually fall back in proportion as the lines do.

In the course of the chequered retreat, a position oblique to the original one may be taken.—The division of the line which is to retire, after facing to the rear, will

will march on to a given distance, and upon the outward squadron of one flank, make a change of position by the echelon march, and then front.—The other division will retire in the same manner, till it arrives at the posted one, it will there instantly commence its change of position, take its place in the intervals, and front in line.—From this situation, the parallel retreat may continue to be made, or a new oblique direction be again required.

S. 100. *Inversion of the Line.*

Although, in general in formations, the inversion of the line, or of its component parts, is and may be avoided, yet there are situations where this rule must be dispensed with.—The squadrons or line may be obliged to wheel by ranks or divisions to the right about, the more readily to oppose a danger, instead of changing its position by a countermarch. It may be under the necessity of forming to a flank, its rear rank in front.—The column with its right in front, may arrive on the left of its ground, and be obliged immediately to form up, and support that point, so that the right of the line will become the left. Part of a second line may double round on the extremity of the first line, thereby to out-flank an enemy. A corps moving to a flank by lines, may be obliged, in the quickest manner, to form up to the front of its march, so that the new lines shall be composed, each of parts of the old ones. But on the whole it is to be recollected, that though the inversion of regiments in a line, and of squadrons in a regiment, ought to occasion no real inconvenience, yet that of the divisions of the squadron within itself, would lead to disorder, and must be studiously avoided.

Many other situations may be imagined, where opposing the rear rank admits of no choice, and where the inversion of the divisions of the line will gain much time, and becomes absolutely necessary, when the

the formation is required from the point of appui, and near to an enemy. Troops must therefore be accustomed to such operations, but the application of them requires great method and recollection, otherwise, in such critical situations, confusion is very easily produced, and will even be attended with the most fatal consequences.

S. 101. When, without the help of advanced Objects, the Commander of a Line changes the Position of the Whole, or Part of it, to a Flank.

In original formations of the line from column of march, preparatory points can always be given: *but in changes of the line, or parts of it*, from one position to another, more advantageous with respect to the enemy, and to making the attack, the new one must often depend on, and be taken up by the eye of the commander only, while the whole is in motion, and who will himself conduct the movement.

The change being determined on, the movement being necessarily a quick one, and the body that is to make it being apprized accordingly, the commander places himself at the flank which is to lead, and has five or six detached persons with him, ready to take his orders.

The line breaks into column to the flank (of divisions, sub-divisions, or ranks by three's, according as the ground allows; for in such an operation, the column must set out on such a front as it can maintain, till it again forms in line); on this occasion, the pivots being lined, and the wheeling distances being true is most essential, and therefore if the divisions can form column backwards, it should be done.

The commander being before the pivot of the leading division, puts the whole in motion, and conducts the

S

head

head of the column, in such manner as he finds proper, towards the ground on which he proposes to form a new line, and to the pace and path of which head, the rest of the column must strictly conform.

When he arrives near to where he proposes his formation, with a glance of the eye, without stopping, and according to the enemy's situation, he determines the direction he is to give his line, and the point where he means to enter it.—Conducting his leading division, so as by a circling movement of the *Shoulder forward*, to arrive with its pivot flank on the line on that point, he there halts a person to indicate the point of entry, (with his horse's head to the flank of the column) and pursues the direction, which is only known to himself, and in which he will always find and take intermediate points.—From distance to distance he leaves persons placed in the above manner in the line, for the direction of the column pivots, which they are to take care successively to pass close to—He HALTS the column when he finds necessary—WHEELS up into line—Is ready to ADVANCE—And ATTACK in line or echelon.

It is evident that the success of this operation depends on the attention of officers, quickness of wheels, covering of pivots, and justness of distances, more especially in moving along the line of formation.

In this manner may regimental commanders rapidly conduct regimental columns, from one position to another on which they are to form.

If instead of the prolongation in column, circumstances of the moment should require the line to be formed on the leading squadron, *by inversion of the flanks*—The divisions of the leading squadron, when all on the new direction, would be ordered to halt, and wheel up into line.—The other squadrons would successively pass on behind it, and behind each other,
and

and each, as it was opposite to its ground, would wheel up its divisions, move up, and halt in line. In this manner the squadrons within themselves would not be inverted, although the regiments and the line itself would: and this is an operation that may be expected in situations where an enemy's flank is to be gained.

When a line is thus forming on its leading flank, it is in a situation, as soon as a few of its first squadrons have wheeled up (and if circumstances require it), to attack in echelon from that flank; being supported by the other squadrons, which, as they arrive opposite their place in line, wheel up, and successively move on behind each other (a named number forming each echelon) at a distance necessarily established by this operation. Or when a sufficient part of the line is formed, it will move on; the remainder of the column will form a second line behind it, and the whole will attack.

S. 102. *Attack of Cavalry in Front and Flank.* Fig. 71.

The covering a flank in a line of cavalry, or having a body behind a flank, ready to turn that of the enemy, is of the greatest consequence, and their previous situation should be concealed as much as possible.—That flank which is not to be employed in turning the enemy, cannot be so well secured as by two or three squadrons placed in echelon to the first line, about 100 paces from each other—With difficulty the enemy can turn this echelon, and it enables the other flank to act with more freedom. These squadrons in echelon are kept refused, or brought up into line, according to circumstances.

But behind the flank, destined to turn that of the enemy, several squadrons are to be placed, in open column of half squadrons; these, at the ordered moment,

ment, are to move up rapidly, and circle round each other, and the enemy's flank.—The whole body being in motion to the front; the forming up of these squadrons must begin when about four hundred yards from the enemy, and must be executed with the greatest rapidity; the line moves on at a gentle trot to give time for this manœuvre, and does not attack till the enemy's flank is gained, when the whole CHARGE together; and finish by these squadrons (which should be light cavalry, exerting their greatest activity) being in a circling position round the flank and rear of the enemy.

When these half squadrons are in column behind a flank of the line—At the ordered moment each will half wheel to the flank, and by the *diagonal march* and *shoulder forward* will successively attain their relative positions, taking care to conform to their leading half squadron, and to each other. The half squadrons will continue to preserve a small distance from each other, and not join, as they are thereby more active and manageable.

Fig. 72.

When these half squadrons are in column at quarter distance, behind the flank of the line. At the ordered moment, the divisions of the column will wheel to the flank ranks by three's; the head of the leading division will take a new direction of the same degree, at which an incline is made, to this all the rest will, as soon as possible, conform; and when they have opened about one hundred yards from the line, the leading half squadron will front, and move on a point taken fifty yards from the enemy's flank, the others continue their march rapidly by the flank, and passing each other, they successively front and move on beyond each other, the whole being thus at first in an echelon to the rear, but which gradually changes to an echelon to the front, and at the finishing of the attack, the enemy's flank and rear is gained.

The last one or two squadrons of such a column are always to be considered as the supporters of those that

that attack, and are destined to counteract any movement made by the enemy's second line, or reserves, to take them in flank; they will form in a second line, and half squadrons will front successively as they arrive behind their relative bodies, and will follow at a due distance to support.—It is evident, that the movements of the line itself must correspond with, and give time to, the flank bodies, who have so much more ground to go over.

Whenever part of a body shall outflank an enemy, on arriving near him, such part will rapidly circle inwards, so as to attack him in flank and rear, and the smallest body gaining a flank, and being well supported, is sufficient to endanger a whole line.

This operation may be supposed to commence from column of march.—Two opposite columns of half squadrons arrive and halt in presence of each other, and close up to half or quarter distance. The enemy's column begins to form in line.—Two or three squadrons of the other column are destined to attack a flank: the rest of that column forms quickly in line, on whatever division appears most advantageous; and just before such formation is completed, the flanking squadrons begin their operation, to which the advance of the line corresponds, and the whole attack at the moment the rear and flank of the enemy is gained.—If the flanking squadrons are at the head of the column, they are then in readiness when required to take their oblique position, and till that begins, they partake of the movements made by those immediately behind them, and preserve their relative situation with respect to them, whether they are formed on, or whether they extend to either flank.—If the flanking squadrons are in the rear of the column, they follow its movements, which brings them up to the front, and commence their peculiar operation, just before the formation of

the line can be completed, and so as that no unnecessary pause may take place.

In a charge of either infantry or cavalry, though a momentary disorder may take place; yet the instant the enemy gives way, the line must be again formed, and the pursuit continued by light troops, or by detached troops or companies only.—These follow the enemy with the utmost vigour, and as soon as the line is in order, it advances again and completes the defeat.

When cavalry attack infantry, they are too apt to break, but it ought always to be remembered, that when the enemy is dispersed, they give up the pursuit to the second line, which is supported by the first as soon as it regains its order. Light cavalry are, in general, placed in the second line.

When cavalry attack cavalry, the squadrons must be firm and compact; but when they attack infantry, the files may be opened, and the men may bend down on their horses necks.

When cavalry attack a battery, they must not ride up in front of it; but they must, in two divisions, attack it on each flank, the files opened, and the men may bend on their horses necks.

When cavalry attack infantry, they should in general do it in column, and the squadrons of the column should have at least three times as much distance between them as the extent of their front.—The leading squadron, after breaking the enemy's line, should move forward and form; the two succeeding ones should each wheel outwards by half squadrons, and charge along the line; whatever other squadrons follow will support and act according to circumstances. If the enemy's line is considerable, the attacking cavalry forms several columns of three or four squadrons each,

each, and charges on different points at the same time.

It may be expected that under a severe fire both the cavalry and infantry lose to a degree their regular order before they arrive on the enemy, but cavalry acting against cavalry can profit by its manœuvre and order till the very last moment; for till the horses heads come up against each other, there is nothing that ought to prevent a cavalry soldier from being as steady in the ranks, as if he was at a common exercise.

There may be situations where a small body of cavalry, such as two or three squadrons, is to attack another nearly similar body, and can depend on its superiority of movement and agility.—For this purpose it may divide into small bodies of fourteen or sixteen file each, with intervals equal to their front, and the second line, or reserves, must cover those intervals at one hundred and fifty paces in the rear.—This enables to turn the enemy's flank rapidly, by having a more extended front, and several light and moveable bodies.—If there are three squadrons, the first line may be formed of six small troops, and the second of three, each of which latter will be subdivided into two; five of these cover the intervals, and the sixth outflanks to right or left as may be ordered.—If there are only two squadrons, the first line is of four small troops, the second of two, which are again subdivided, three of them covering intervals and one outflanking.

The second line is not only used as a support, but it may also sometimes be brought up in part, on the flank of the first line, while advancing to the attack, in order suddenly to turn the enemy's flank.—If there are six troops in a first line covered by six smaller ones, two of these latter may be taken from one flank to turn that of the enemy: this leaves one interval uncovered, because, if these two small troops are
taken

taken from the flank on which the second line does not out-flank, then this second line covers to that hand one interval more, which changes the troop that before out-flanked into a covering troop.—Sometimes the advantage to be gained by out-flanking an enemy may appear so great, that half the second line will be taken away for that purpose, being enabled to leave some intervals uncovered, in consequence of the disorder the enemy is thrown into by this manœuvre.

Sometimes the difficulty of retiring from a superior enemy, who may have been met with unexpectedly, and who may be enabled to out-flank, makes it necessary, where situation of ground favours, to endeavour to deceive him, and to form some of the divisions into a rank entire, thereby to cover more ground; such divisions preserve a file entire on each of their flanks, and take additional intervals in proportion to their numbers; the enemy, till he comes close, cannot ascertain the thinness of this disposition, and may be induced to give up his idea of attacking; at any rate it is better to risk the attack with this formation than to allow a flank to be turned, and in such situation of necessity, even an attempt, if possible, should be made on one of the enemy's flanks.

SECOND LINES.

No considerable body should ever be assembled or formed for action, without a proportion of it being placed in *reserve* or in *second line*, and more or less strong according to circumstances.—The movements of such second line will always correspond to those of the first, and it will preserve its parallelism and distance.—If the first line makes a flank or central change of position, the second must make a change also on such point as will bring it into its relative situation.

The

The march of the second line in front is regulated by its own squadron of direction, which moves relatively to that of the first line. In forming in line it will march on its own points, which are parallel to, and ascertained in consequence of those of the first.

When the line breaks into columns to the front; the second will generally follow those of the first.—When the march is to the flanks, the second line will compose a separate column or columns. When the march is to the rear, the second line will lead in columns.

The distance between lines may be in general from one hundred and fifty to two hundred yards.

Second lines are seldom as strong as the first; they are often divided into distinct bodies, covering parts of the first line, or are placed in columns behind it, in order, when required, to lengthen out or to support the line.

Where several and supporting lines of attack are formed, the second should out-flank the first, and the third the second, &c. The advanced one being thereby strengthened and supported on its outward wing.

The officer commanding the second line must always be properly apprised of the nature of any change to be made by the first, that he may readily determine his corresponding movements.

Whenever the first line breaks and manœuvres by its right to face to the left, or by its left to face to the right.—The movements of the second line to conform to that of the first are free and unembarrassed, and it may turn round the manœuvring flank of the first line, and take its new position behind it, by extending itself parallel to that direction, how oblique soever it may be.

The central movement generally required from the second line to conform to that of the first, is equivalent to that line marching in two columns of divisions,
from.

from near the center obliquely to the front, and from that situation forming to both flanks. (S. 80.)

In changes made by the movements of the open column; it requires much attention.—To conduct heads of regimental column, of both lines nearly parallel to their lateral ones, and perpendicularly or diagonally, to front or rear according to the nature of the movement.—To determine with precision, and in due time, their points in the new line, that wavering and uncertainty of march may be avoided.—In great movements to allow the soldier every facility of motion, without increasing the distances of divisions, and to require the most exact attention on entering the new line and forming.—To avoid obstacles in the course of marching, but as soon as possible to re-enter the proper path of the column.

All changes of position of a first line are made according to one of the modes already prescribed: in general, in critical situations, and where it can be done, they are made on a fixed flank or central point, and by the echellon march of half squadrons of the line.—But the movements of a second being protected, more complicated, and embracing more ground, are made by the march of regimental columns regulated by a certain division of the line.

In most cases, and where great concert of movement is not required, a second line may march in regimental columns, each from its flank nearest to the new position, and relative points in it being prepared, each will march up and prolong the line.

All squadrons of a second line must, at the completion of every change of position, find themselves placed in the same relative situation with respect to the first line, as they were before the commencement of the movement.

In all cases where a change of position is made on
a flank

a flank or central point of the first line; the movement of its *covering point* of the second line, determines the new relative situation of that second line.

To find this point, it is necessary to premise—That Fig. 73. 74. if a circle is described from any point (A) of a first line (AE) with a radius equal to the distance betwixt the two lines; then its *covering point* (a) at that time in the second line will be always in the circumference of that circle, at such place as the second line becomes a tangent to the circle.—Should the first line, therefore, make a change of position (AR) either on a flank or a central point (A); its *covering point* (a) will move so as still to preserve and halt in its relative situation (a, 2), and by the movement and halt of that point preceded by the one (d) of *intersection*, every other part of the second line, either by following them, or by yielding from them, is regulated and directed.—Betwixt the old and new situation of the *covering point* (a) and equidistant from each, lies the *point* (d) where the old and new positions of the second line *intersect*, and which is a most material one in the movement of that line.

S. 103. *When two Lines change Position on a central Point of the first Line.*

(A) is the point on which the change is made; (a) Fig. 74. is obviously its *covering point* in the second line, whose distance in yards is known.—The direction of the first line (AR) being ascertained, it becomes immediately necessary to mark the *covering point* (a, 2) in the second line, and also the point of intersection (d), that the prolongation of that line may be also determined.—From the point (A), therefore, and in a direction perpendicular to the new line, a person accurately takes the known distance between the two lines, and halts at (a, 2) and from thence by his eye observes

observes the perpendicular to the line which he has just measured, and also its intersection with the second line equidistant from (a, and a, 2) which gives the point (d), together with the direction of the new second line.—The points (a, 2 and d) being thus fixed, the line proceeds to make their movement, viz. the first line by the echelon march (S. 90.); the second line (B) breaks inward to the point (d), that division moves its pivot flank along the new line, followed by all those betwixt it and (a); till (a) arrives at the point (a, 2).—The other divisions and regiments of the second line move relatively to the part (a, d), the whole performing the precise operation already detailed in the change of position of the line on a moveable central point. (S. 80.)

Fig. 73.

But in order to accelerate the movement of the second line in central changes: a division or flank point (o), as much beyond (a) as (a) is removed from (d) may be taken; this rear point is evidently the one which will rest at the point of intersection (d), when (a) is arrived and halted at (a, 2).—As soon, therefore, as the points (o, d) are ascertained, and without waiting for the progressive movement of this center part of the line, every thing that is in the rear of (o) may march and form in the new position, regarding (o, 2) as its leading flank point; and every thing that faces to (d), regarding (d, 2) as its leading flank point, will march and form upon it, in the new line accordingly. (S. 80.)—If the first line points on any very distant object; the second line (a, 2) will be readily judged to pass a very little behind that object.

S. 104. *When two Lines change Position forward on a Flank of the first Line.*

The direction of the first line being ascertained, Fig. 75. that line will march into it by the echellon march. (S. 90.) In the mean time the *covering flank point* (a, 2) in the new second line having been taken, and also the *intersecting point* (d); these points serve as the base of formation.—The second line will break into open column facing to the division (d) of intersection; the whole will proceed as in (S. 80). That division marching along the new line till (a) arrives at (a, 2), and when the other regiments and squadrons that have moved forward are anew arranged in open column, they wheel up into line.

S. 105. *When two Lines change Position backward on a Flank of the first Line.*

The direction of the first line being ascertained, Fig. 76. that line will march into it by the echellon movement to the rear. (S. 90)—The covering and intersecting points (a, 2) and (d), in the new second line serving as a base of formation, having being ascertained as well as the point (o), that line breaks into open column, facing to the point of intersection: the part of the line between (a) and (o) marches on to the point of intersection, and from thence prolongs the new line: The part of the line behind (o) regarding (d) as its leading flank point of formation, will march and form upon it in the new line accordingly. (S. 80.)

S. 106. When two formed Lines wheel into open Column, march to a Flank, change Direction, and take up a new Position.

Fig. 77.

If the new position is a retired one.—Both lines wheel into open column (suppose the left in front) and move on.—(C) is a point where the head of the first line is to change its direction into that of (CD) by wheeling on its pivot flank: The leader of the second line being apprized of this point, sends forward to ascertain his corresponding point (c), and his parallel direction (c, d); these two points become the base of formation for the second line, and (d) is in the intersection of the old and new lines.—Both columns proceed in their first direction, and when the first line arrives at (C), the head wheels on its pivot into the direction (C, D), followed by the rest of its column; but the second line then changing its head on the point (C), moves towards it there to enter its corresponding direction.—The first line halts, and such parts of it as are in the new direction remain so, while the rear of the column, by the movement of (S. 77) gains the new direction, and by wheeling up forms in line.—Or if the ground permits it, enters the new line by the echellon march (S. 44), each division first countermarching by files, and then facing about, so that its rear rank may lead.

When the first line halts; *if the head division of the second line has not entered the new direction*, it still moves on to its point of entry, (c), prolongs the line till it arrives behind its corresponding point (A 2,) of the first line, it then halts, and also all such others as have arrived in the new direction, while the rear of the column, which since the halt of the first line has been gradually (by obliquing) and regularly throwing
itself

itself to the left, places itself in open column on the new direction, and wheels up into line.

When the first line halts, *if the head of the second has entered the direction*, it moves on till it arrives behind its corresponding point of the first one, and the rear of the column obliques, to avoid interfering with, and to make place for the forming of the first line.—When the head halts, such part of the column as is not in the new direction, gains it by the movement of (S. 77.)

If the head of the first line, when it arrives at (c), waits till the second line arrives at the corresponding point (c), they will then proceed equally—or the march of the second line may begin proportionally sooner than that of the first.

If the new position is an advanced one—The first line Fig. 78. changes its direction at (C), by a wheel to the reverse hand into (C, D), marches on till the head is halted; such part of the column as is not in the new line, enters it by the divisions of the column wheeling back into echelon, and then marching up successively into line.—The second line, which has ascertained its corresponding points (c, d), moves on, enters the new direction at (d), by a wheel to its reverse hand, and prolongs the line till it arrives at its flank point, when the whole halt; and the regiments of such part of the column as are not then in the new direction, gain it by the movements of (S. 77.)—The second line must take care not to pass its intersecting point (d), but after arriving at it, must wait till the head of the first line, which has more ground to go over, arrives equal with it in the new line; it will then move on.

S. 107. *Passage of Lines.*

A line of cavalry obliged to retire through a line of infantry, will, when arrived close to the infantry, front, and instantly march off each half squadron (from its right flank) ranks by two's, straight to the rear; wherever the heads of half squadrons present themselves, the infantry will make openings sufficient for four horses to pass through.—The heads of the half squadrons remain dressed, and preserve distances from the left.—When at a sufficient distance in the rear, the open column is formed (right in front) by the closing in and wheeling up of the two's. Pivots being then adjusted, the parallel line is formed by the wheeling up of the half squadron.

If instead of forming in parallel line, an oblique position with the left thrown back is to be taken; this must have been prepared, by bringing the heads of files, during the march to the rear, gradually into such direction.—And if the right is to be thrown back, then the half squadron must have marched by two's, from their left flank, instead of their right one.—A retiring line may also throw back a wing, by forming in line very soon after passing, and then taking an oblique position to the rear, by the echellon march, or some other of the modes already prescribed.

If squadrons are to pass through infantry in their front—When the line arrives close behind them, each squadron will march from its center, ranks by two's, (eight men in front).—They will all pass at the same instant through the openings which are made for them, and at the distance of thirty yards the heads will halt and dress, the squadrons will form, and the line move on.—If the line has attacked, and broken the enemy, and that smaller detachments than squadrons are to pursue, they will at the ordered instant march from a flank,

flank, ranks by two's, pass the infantry, form up while in motion, and pursue with vigour.

Lines of cavalry exchanging situations may do it in the same manner as prescribed in passing through infantry.—The second line may either advance to the first, and halt, while the first passes through it; or the first retire towards the second, halt, front, and then pass.—As there are intervals already established between squadrons, the squadrons themselves may be considered as so many obstacles to a passing line; therefore, whatever part of such passing line is opposite the intervals, may move through them; and whatever part of each squadron is interrupted, will follow its passing part by ranks of two's, behind each flank of it, and again move up into line, when they quit the intervals about twenty yards.

When squadrons are strong, and exceed forty-eight files, six or eight files of each may be occasionally placed in reserve, fifty paces behind their proper squadrons, and to whose movements they are attached and correspond.—Their ordered situation may be behind either flank, or opposite an interval (in general the right interval) and they will be considered in the calculation of manœuvres of the line.—In general, they will act as a second line, and when column of march is formed, they may make part of it, place themselves in the interval, and follow the rear of their respective squadrons.—They may be advantageously employed to flank, to skirmish, to pursue, or to form advanced or rear guards.

When flankers, skirmishers, or pursuers, are ordered out from the body of the squadron, they may in general be taken from one or both flank divisions, and consist of one or two complete sub-divisions, or one or two complete three's, thereby leaving every
Flankers and skirmishers.

other part of the squadron entire ; they will be commanded by appointed officers, move out at the instant of command, and proceed to perform those duties in which every cavalry soldier of every kind must be individually instructed and practised, and be master of the use of his fire arms and sword, when single, as well as in rank.

S. 108. *The Column of Route, or March.*

The column of march is the foundation of all distant movements, and even of evolutions and manœuvres.—It is in that manner that the columns of an army should perform their marches, that an enemy should be approached, and that safety can be insured to the troops in their transitions from one point to another.

Marches on
what front
generally
made.

All marches, for any considerable distance, will at all times be made preferably, where the ground allows, in column of divisions of the line, viz. by half squadrons, or divisions, or sub-divisions, when the squadrons exceed forty files.—But where the breadth of the routes so require it, the march will be made by six men in front, (ranks by three's) ; four men in front, (ranks by two's) ; or finally, two men in front by the filing of ranks ; this last is never to be done, but in cases of absolute necessity.

Diminish-
ing or in-
creasing the
front of the
column.

All diminishing or increasing the front of a column of march is in general done by each body of the column at the point where the leading division first does it ; such operation should be performed with quickness and firmness, so as if possible not thereby to retard or open out the column.—At all points of increasing or diminishing the front of the march, an intelligent officer, per regiment or brigade, should be stationed to see that it is performed with celerity ; and the commander of a considerable column should have constant reports and inspections made, that the column

column is moving with proper regularity ; he should have officers in advance to apprise him of difficulties to be avoided, or obstacles to be passed, and should himself apply every proper means to obviate such as may occur in the march.—The great principle, on all occasions, of diminishing or increasing the front of the column in march is—That such part as doubles, or forms up, shall slacken or quicken its pace, as may be necessary to conform to the part which has no such operation to perform, but which continues its uniform march without the least alteration, as if no such process was going on ; and if this is observed, distances can never be lost, or the column lengthened out.

In marching by divisions in open column, where diminishing the front one half or less becomes necessary, the pivot part always doubles behind the other part of the division, and when it can again move up, it is ordered so to do. By doubling of pivot divisions.

In marches by divisions in open column, where the whole can pass through an opening, except a certain number of files ; the center of the division may be presented to such opening, pass in front, and the interrupted two or three files on each flank will follow by ranks by two's, and again move up when the obstacle is passed. By doubling of flank files.

A line of cavalry will generally commence its march in column of four divisions (of squadrons) and not diminish that front till the circumstances of the route require it.—When it diminishes to a front of subdivisions, or of ranks by three's, the column is not lengthened out, nor is any part of it obliged to halt, or to alter its pace, if such operation is performed with precision ; but when the diminution is to a front of ranks by two's, or by files, then a successive halt must take place from front to rear of the column, proportional to the space it lengthens out which must not be increased by slowness of execution, and is in part to When the column diminishes its front.

to be remedied by a temporary increase of pace in the front.

When the column increases its front,

When the column of ranks by two's, or by files, is to increase its front, being then in a situation of considerable extension, the leading squadron must be ordered to slacken its pace, and make occasional halts, to allow for the operation, otherwise hurry and disorder must take place, and the rear be harassed in endeavouring to gain their distances. When the rear is nearly up, the column can then resume its ordinary rate of march. *When the column* of ranks by three's, by sub-divisions, or by divisions, is to increase its front: As it is not then in a state of extension, such operation will be performed without any general alteration of pace, by the nimble and successive moving up of its parts at the proper instant.

Situation of officers in marches of the column.

In all marches by half squadrons or divisions, officers will lead their divisions, observing their just distances; but they may also occasionally be directed to move on the flanks. In all marches of the column by sub-divisions, ranks by three's, ranks by two's, or by files; officers will be on the flank of their respective divisions, attentive to the steadiness of the march, to the riding of the men, that they do not distress their horses, lengthen out the column, make improper stops, or otherwise act in an unsoldier-like manner.—Officers must always attend to and correct the men of the division before them, as well as their own.

Attentions in column of march.

The movement of a column of march ought, if possible, to be as smooth and equal as that of a column of manœuvre. The head of the column gives the pace at which the whole must move; no particular squadron or regiment is to perform any partial act whatever, that can possibly affect the rest of the line; every alteration of movement and every increase or decrease of the front of the column comes from the leading squadron only, and must be attentively and gradually complied with at the proper instant, so as to

to shake and affect the rear of the column as little as possible.

The most important exercise that troops can attend to is, the march in column of route. No calculations can be made on columns which do not move with an ascertained regularity, and great fatigue arises to the soldier: a general cannot depend on execution, and therefore can make no combination of time and distance in the arrival of columns at their several points; in many situations, an improper extended column will be liable to be beat in detail, and before it can be formed. Troops that are seldom assembled for the manœuvres of war, can hardly feel the necessity of the modes in which a considerable body of cavalry must march and move.

Importance
of exactness
in the
march.

The distance of columns from each other during a march, depends on the circumstances of ground, and the object of that march with regard to future formations. The more columns in which a considerable corps marches, the less extent in depth will it take up; the less frequent will be its halts, and the more speedily can it form in order of battle to the front.

Columns
and their
distances.

On the combinations of march, and on their execution by the component parts of the body, does the success of every military operation or enterprize depend. To fulfil the intentions of the chief, every concurrent exertion of the subordinate officer is required, and the best calculated disposition, founded on local knowledge, must fail, if there is a want of that punctuality of execution, which every general must trust to, and has a right to expect from the leaders of his columns.

Combina-
tions of
march.

Where a march is made near the enemy.—If to a flank, the object must be, that at no time, if possible, the extent in column may be greater than the extent required.

March of
the column
near the
enemy.

required in line.—If to the front, or to the rear, then the object will be to march on a front of divisions, or half squadrons, with their distances closed up one half or more, that they may the more quickly deploy into a line when required; therefore in such situations, if a column is obliged to diminish its front, from any obstacle in the route, it will, in general, after passing it, be ordered again to increase it, that it may be the better prepared for the great object of the march.

But where the perfect safety of the march is undoubted, and that the column has been obliged to diminish its front to ranks by two's, or by files, it will remain in such order, till there is a prospect that it can double up, without being again liable to be reduced; for the frequent repetition of these operations in a long march, unavoidably increases the fatigue of the column, especially to the rear part of it, at a time when it is so material to avoid it.

Occasional
stops in the
column.

On a march, and where the routes are indifferent, it is not easy to prevent partial and occasional stops in the divisions of the column; these, as well as their subsequent movement, will be successive, and as a lengthening out is the necessary consequence of all successive movements, they must stop sufficiently closed up to each other to allow for this circumstance, and for their retaking their just distance, when again put in motion: and to this officers must pay great attention, that the column may not be improperly extended.

Attention of
officers on
the march.

On a march, there are so many occasional and temporary halts, that individual soldiers should at no other time be allowed to stop or dismount—and when any of them are so permitted, it must be then evident that the unavoidable halt will allow of this being done without affecting the march of the column.—No man must be permitted to ride in a careless lounging

louncing manner, which tends to fatigue and ruin the horse.—No one is to stop under pretence of watering his horse, much less is any division of the column to do so.—At a general halt every necessary examination and adjustment of saddles, girths, &c. should be made.

Regiments are not solely to depend on the one immediately before them for alteration of pace, or for the diminution or increase of the front of the column. If there is reason to think that it has not originated from the front, they are to stop the mistake, and not continue it.—The look out of each commanding officer must be as forward as possible, at the same time that he is to recollect, in the execution of any of the operations of the column, how he can aid in moderating the difficulties and fatigue that always go on increasing to those behind him.

Attention of commanding officers in column of march.

The necessary changes in the direction of the route are gradually made by the divisions of the column, as on a moveable pivot, and not by quick and square wheels, unless the divisions are confined on each flank, and thereby obliged to make fixed wheels, to prevent the loss of intervals.

Change of direction.

If any small distance is to be gained or corrected, it must be done gradually, by a whole division at once, and by word of command, not man by man, hurrying up singly, as troopers are too apt to do, without reflecting that such conduct makes a succession of false intervals somewhere else, which is equally material to the march of the column, and tends to throw the whole into disorder.

Correction of distances.

The march of a column of cavalry, combined with that of infantry and the horses carrying their baggage, forage, &c. is commonly made at a walk—Should a trot, or a quicker movement for a considerable distance, be required from such a body in ground that is rough,

Quick movement of the column.

rough, unfavourable, and not perfectly uniform, it will demand the greatest circumspection in the leaders of squadrons and regiments so to conduct their several bodies as not to open out the column too much, nor to hurry nor harass those in the rear; they must endeavour, as much as possible, to move each at a steady pace, and gradually to regain such distances as each may unavoidably lose, for this is a thing that must happen; on such occasion, some small increase of distances between squadrons may be permitted, that sudden stops may be foreseen, and their effects moderated; by such attentions, the horses will be much relieved, and whatever extension is thereby occasioned, will be immediately corrected, when the head of the column changes its pace to a walk, or arrives at the point where it is to halt or form.

Baggage.

On a march, servants, led horses, and canteen horses remain with their squadrons.—The situation and movements of carriages belonging to the column is prescribed in orders.—The place of the bat horses is always ascertained for them, in the order in which their regiments follow each other: they are never to march in the divisions of the troops, but in front or rear of the whole column, according to circumstances and as shall be directed; a sufficient guard is to be with those of each regiment, and great care taken that they do not fall behind, straggle, or extend the column.—It is seldom that the bat-horses can be ordered to march on the flank of the column: it ought only to be in ground where there is a certainty that no defile can occur, for in such case they cannot be permitted to enter into the column, but must stop till the troops have passed, and follow in the rear.—When they do move on a flank, it is always on that flank which is not next the enemy.

THESE REGULATIONS comprehend the circumstances most essential for the movements of a line or large body of cavalry, and from them ought to be deduced and arise the more minute and detailed rules for the instruction of individuals, and of small bodies.

Cavalry Regulations.

THE GENERAL PRINCIPLES for the formation and movements of cavalry and infantry being invariably the same, their full and more particular explanation in several points is to be found in the **REGULATIONS FOR THE INFANTRY**, which, by His Majesty's command, have been lately published, and are ordered to be observed: an attentive perusal of them is therefore essentially necessary to every cavalry officer.

Infantry Regulations.

EVOLUTIONS.

WHAT are generally called the evolutions, or the doublings, breakings, and diminution of the front of the squadrons, to enable them to move with facility in all situations, are the same, and common to all denominations of cavalry.

Evolutions of the Squadron.

The squadron is formed at close order, and dressed to the right.

Officers, quarter masters, and trumpets, are at their posts in squadron: farriers are sent to the rear.

The words of command are given by the leaders of squadrons.

REAR RANK, TAKE
ORDER!

} A caution.

MARCH!

{ The rear rank reins back by the right to its proper distance, and squadron officers, &c. remain in the same situation as at close order, except the whole of the serrefile rank, which reins back to the distance of order; and the whole of it close to its own right, that it may not interfere with the

the regularity and appearance of the doubling and forming of the ranks.

HALF RANKS TO THE
RIGHT DOUBLE!

A caution.

MARCH!

The left half rank reins back the half distance of the ranks—makes a pause of an instant, and then by signal passes to the right, till it covers the standing half rank.—The standard remains with the standing half rank of the front. The serrefile rank remains closed to the right.

DIVISIONS OF RANKS,
TO THE RIGHT DOUBLE!

A caution.

MARCH!

The left divisions of ranks rein back, half the distance, pause, pass, and cover the standing ones. The standard reins back.—The serrefiles remain as above.

SUBDIVISIONS OF
RANKS, TO THE
RIGHT DOUBLE!

A caution.

MARCH!

The left subdivisions of ranks rein back, pause, pass, and cover the standing ones.—Standard remains—a proportion of serrefiles double behind their right.

FORM QUARTER RANKS! A caution.

The left subdivisions of ranks that doubled, pass to the left till uncovered, pause,
and

MARCH!

} and then move up by the
right, and by signal.—
Serrefiles that doubled, also
move up.

FORM HALF RANKS!

A caution.

MARCH!

{ The divisions of ranks that
doubled, pass to the left,
pause, move up by the right,
and by signal.

FORM SQUADRON!

A caution.

MARCH!

{ The half ranks that dou-
bled, pass to the left, pause,
and move up by the right,
and by signal.

These doublings of ranks are performed by reining back, and passaging; and the formations are performed by passaging and moving up. They are evolutions of exercise only, and calculated to shew the riding of man and horse.

Should they at any time be required to be performed while the squadron is in motion, the ranks will both double and move up by a sharp incline.

In the following half rank wheeling (which is here mentioned, in order to be occasionally practised) it is to be observed, that the ranks must be at a greater distance than order from each other, and at least equal to the front of the half rank. Should more than one squadron be standing in line, their intervals must be equal to the front of squadrons, for the performance of this evolution together.

**HALF RANKS WHEEL
ABOUT, OUTWARDS!**

} A caution.

The

MARCH!

HALT!

The half ranks wheel about outwards on their proper flank men. The standard wheels with the right half rank—the commanding officer turns on his own ground—quarter masters, trumpets, and rear officers shift to the flank, so as to remain in front of their respective half ranks.—The half ranks halt, when the wheel of the half circle is completed, and eyes remain turned to the wheeling hand.

HALF RANKS WHEEL
ABOUT, INWARDS!

A caution.

MARCH!

HALT!

The half ranks wheel about, halt, and dress to the center. They must take care to finish the wheel together.

It may be observed that several squadrons in line with any interval that is directed, by taking distance of ranks equal to a half rank, may wheel all their half ranks at once any ordered portion of the circle; but the whole must wheel to the same hand, as in the squadron wheelings.

The Squadron halted, and ranks at close Order.

RANKS BY THREE'S!
RIGHT WHEEL!

As in Section 16, 23: but the following correction is to be made to S. 16, and is always to take place, viz.—In wheeling to right or left ranks by three's: the standard and its coverer, instead of placing

MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

{ placing themselves betwixt the two center ranks of sixes as formerly ordered, are to place themselves in the middle of those two ranks, according to the hand wheeled to; so that such two ranks will consist of seven men instead of six.—The same will also take place in wheeling ranks by two's, for thereby the squadron will be less extended.

MARCH!

{ The squadron moves at whatever pace, and to whatever distance is necessary, preserving an exact alignment, and all eyes turned to the proper front, the left.

HALT!

By the left.

THREE'S—WHEEL UP!

A caution.

MARCH!

{ Closing as much as necessary to the right.

HALT! DRESS!

Eyes to the right.

The same movement of ranks by three's takes place to the left, which returns the squadron to its former ground.

RANKS BY THREE'S—
RIGHT ABOUT WHEEL!

{ A caution.

MARCH!

{ The standard, flank officers, and their coverers, turn singly on their own ground while the others are wheeling about.

By

HALT! DRESS! By the standard.
 MARCH! To the rear, as far as proper.
 HALT! On former ground.

These wheelings of ranks by three's are performed by each rank separately and independently.

SUBDIVISIONS, RIGHT } A caution.
 WHEEL!

MARCH! { The subdivisions wheel to the right on their respective flanks. The rear ranks are well closed up to the front ranks—Officers, standard, &c. as in Section 16.

HALT! DRESS! { To the proper front, and a leader on the flank of each.

MARCH! In the alignment as ordered.

HALT!

SUBDIVISIONS WHEEL } A caution.
 UP!

MARCH!

HALT! DRESS! { To the right, and then to the standards when ordered.

The same movement of subdivisions takes place to the left, and returns the squadron to its former ground.

COLUMN OF SUBDI-
 VISION FROM THE
 LEFT MOVE OFF TO
 THE REAR. } A caution.

The

MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!
 MARCH!
 LEFT WHEEL!
 HALT! DRESS!
 MARCH!

{ The subdivisions wheel to the left, and at the second word, March, the leading one again wheels to the left. The other subdivisions move on, and again separately wheel to the left as they cover and follow in open column the leading subdivision of the column, which advances at such pace as is ordered.

ON THE LEADING
 SUBDIVISION, TO
 THE REAR, FORM
 SQUADRON.

{ The leading subdivision by order wheels to the left about and halts. The others wheel round the leading one, and successively join on its right. (S. 50.)

SUBDIVISIONS FROM
 THE RIGHT, MARCH
 IN COLUMN TO THE
 FRONT.

} A caution.

MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!
 MARCH!
 LEFT WHEEL!
 HALT! DRESS!
 MARCH!

{ The right subdivision stands fast. The others wheel to the right; instantly move on, and again wheel to the left, when they cover the leading one, which marches forward, and clears the ground as soon as the second one arrives on its flank in order to wheel.

HALT!

{ The whole, when its head is arrived at its former ground.

TO THE FRONT FORM
 SQUADRON!

} A caution.

The

MARCH!

{ The following subdivisions
incline briskly to the left,
and form up to the leading
one which is halted.

The subdivisions are here supposed of six files each at least, otherwise an extension of the column must take place.

FORM OPEN COLUMN
OF DIVISIONS BE-
HIND THE RIGHT.

} A caution.

DIVISIONS, RIGHT
WHEEL! &c. &c.

{ As in Section (36.)—The
right division standing fast,
and the others proceeding to
cover it in open column.

FORM SQUADRON ON
THE RIGHT DIVI-
SION BY THE OB-
LIQUE MARCH.

} A caution.

DIVISIONS ON THE
RIGHT — BACK,
HALF WHEEL, &c.
&c.

{ The right division stands
fast, the others form up to it,
as in (S. 44. 71.)

Divisions also march off in column, to flanks, rear, and front, in the same manner as subdivisions.

FROM (RIGHT OR LEFT)
OF HALF SQUADRONS
TO THE FRONT FILE.

} A caution.

{ The leaders of the rear
rank move up to the front
rank leaders, and both ranks
file to the front from the
named flanks, the standard
leading one of them; the
rear

MARCH !

rear rank is the breadth of a horse distant from and dressed to its front rank—Quarter-masters, &c. follow the files.—Leaders dress, and preserve distances from the right, if filed from the left, and vice versa—Commanding officer is with the standard half squadron.

HALT !

When sufficiently advanced.

**TO THE FRONT FORM
SQUADRON.**

A caution immediately given.

MARCH !

The rear rank leaders cover the front rank leaders, who, with the standard, halt and are in a line.—Each rank forms up at the same time, file after file, to its proper leader, and looks to its formed flank; when the whole are up, the squadron will receive the word Center Dress! and correct any inaccuracy that may exist.

**FROM (RIGHT OR LEFT)
FLANKS OF HALF
SQUADRONS TO THE
REAR FILE !**

A caution—when one of the half squadrons disengages by reining back.

MARCH !

The leaders turn to the rear, and the front rank leaders move up to the rear rank ones, the standard in front of its proper half squadron.—Quarter-masters and trumpets follow their respective half squadrons.—Leaders dress and preserve distance

distance from the right if filed from the left, and vice versa.—The commanding officer in the rear of the standard half squadron.

HALT!

{ When a considerable way beyond the original ground.

TO THE REAR FORM
SQUADRON!

{ A caution.

MARCH!

{ The front rank leaders double round the rear rank leaders; place themselves before them, and together with the standard halt.—Both ranks follow their leaders and form up at the same time; when the whole are up, the squadron will receive the word CENTER DRESS, and correct any inaccuracy that may exist.

One very great advantage arises in the filing of half squadrons from the *same* flank, for in any situation the whole body may be halted and instantly converted into an open column, ready to wheel up into line, or to execute any of the movements or formations of the open or close column.—This is not the case if the filing is made from the right and left of squadrons either to front or rear.

FROM CENTER OF
SQUADRONS TO THE
FRONT, FILE!

{ A caution.

{ The standard, its coverer, and the four center files advance in front.—The rest of the squadron follow in file, till

MARCH!

till the whole is in four files. The commanding officer leads. —The quarter master, &c. are in the rear.—Dressing and distances are taken from the standards, by the first four men. The followers of the files attend to their leaders, at the same time that each four may be dressed to the right. The double files are separated a horse's breadth if they cover their leaders.

HALT!

{ When the head arrives at the original ground.

**TO THE FRONT
FORM SQUADRON!**

{ A caution.

MARCH!

{ The standard and files on each side of it stand fast. The rest of the squadron move up to their places, file by file, and dress to the standard.

{ **SQUADRONS, TO THE RIGHT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH!—HALT!**

{ **SQUADRONS—RIGHT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH!—HALT!**

{ **SQUADRONS—RIGHTABOUT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH!—HALT!**

{ **SQUADRONS—LEFT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH!—HALT!**

{ **SQUADRONS—LEFT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH!—HALT!**

{ **SQUADRONS—LEFT ABOUT WHEEL!**
{ **MARCH—HALT!**

Wheelings
in
Squadron.

SQUADRON—MARCH!

RIGHT—INCLINE!

FORWARD!

LEFT—INCLINE!

FORWARD!

The inclinings of the squadron are performed on the move.

RETIRE, RANKS BY THREES.

HALT, AND FRONT.

Which may bring the squadron nearly on its original ground.

These evolutions are performed partly from the halt, and partly from the march of the squadron.—Their arrangement may be varied to adapt them to ground or circumstances.

On the same principles, can all other doublings or wheelings of the different tellings off of the squadron be made as ordered; and other filings, double or single, may also be applied where necessary. As from the center of a regiment; from the flanks of divisions or ranks of any kind to front or rear, &c. but those above prescribed seem sufficient for every essential purpose.

In the detail of these evolutions, the connecting words of March! Halt! &c. must be substituted according to the situation of the squadron.

The evolutions of two, three, or more squadrons, as a regiment, are the combination of those of the single squadron. The general commands are given by the chief of the whole; those of execution are repeated by leaders of squadrons.

The filings, wheelings, inclinings, and formings up, are performed at a quick pace; and the general movements of the line are made according to the orders that are given.

WHEN THE REGIMENT DISMOUNTS, AND FORMS IN
BATTALION, IT IS COMPOSED OF

<i>Two wings</i>	—Half regiments.
<i>Four grand divisions</i>	—Squadrons.
<i>Eight troops</i>	—Half Squadrons.
<i>Sixteen divisions</i>	—Quarter squadrons.
<i>Thirty-two sub-divisions</i>	—Eights of squadrons.

The *tellings off* of the regiment or squadron, whether mounted or dismounted, are therefore the same, and proportional divisions take place whether 2, 3, or 4 squadrons compose the regiment.

The 4 officers on the right of squadrons, remain there to command troops or half squadrons.

The 4 officers on the left of squadrons, shift and replace the four serjeants on the right of each left half squadron, and command those half squadrons.

The captains that command squadrons will be of the number of the 8 officers that are on the right of troops, and therefore replace some of the squadron flank officers who are otherwise disposed of.

One officer, covered by a serjeant or corporal, is on the left of each half battalion.

The serjeants who are on the right of divisions of each half squadron, and are not hereby displaced, remain in their situation, and thus there is either an officer or serjeant on the right of each division.

The 4 standards are in the center of the regiment, 2 in each rank, and their 4 coverers are immediately behind them in one rank.—Betwixt the standards of the front rank, is a directing serjeant (who need not be covered) to regulate the march of the battalion. From the positions above prescribed, there is an officer on each flank of the standards.

The field officers, mounted, are in the rear of the
battalion,

battalion, and the commanding officer behind the center.

The officers and serjeants in the front rank of the battalion, are covered by their proper non-commissioned officers as when mounted.

All the other officers and supernumerary serjeants are in the serrefile rank behind the battalion, and when the battalion breaks into open column of divisions or subdivisions, one of these officers or serjeants places himself on the flank of, and conducts each of such divisions, as is not naturally provided with a leader from the front.

In every respect therefore, the position of officers, non-commissioned officers and men, and the movements of the regiment when dismounted, are regulated and determined by the principles and commands prescribed for the regiments of infantry.

When the Regiment is to dismount, and form in Battalion.

It is presumed, that officers who are to be on the right of troops, on the flanks of the half battalions, and supernumerary in the rear, and also the serjeants who have to shift their places, are apprized of it.

CLOSE TO THE CENTER OF }
THE LINE TO DISMOUNT! } Is a caution.

THREE'S,—IN-
WARDS, WHEEL!
MARCH!

[Each squadron wheels inwards ranks by three's. Each halts, when at the distance of 2 horses length from the one preceding it.—The whole wheel up into line, squadrons at files closed, boot-top to boot-top. The whole are dressed to
x 2 the

HALT! DRESS!
 MARCH!
 HALT!
 THREE'S WHEEL
 UP! MARCH!
 HALT! DRESS!

the center of the regiment to which they closed in. The commanding officer remains advanced in front of the center—commanders of squadrons are on the flank of their front ranks. Quarter-masters and supernumeraries of the rear, close in to behind the center of their several squadrons, the trumpets on the right, and the farriers on the left of this rank.

EYES TO THE
 RIGHT!

} The whole.

PREPARE TO DIS-
 MOUNT!

{ Rear rank reins back.—Files rein back clear of the standing rank. Gloves are taken off. Carbines sprung, and unstrapped. Collars undone. Reins are shortened, and by signal carbines are placed behind on the near side.

DISMOUNT!

{ The regiment by signals given sharply and without loss of time, dismount, lock swords, and stand fast at horses heads.

LINK HORSES!

{ The horses that doubled are brought up into their ranks, and linked to the center under the bridle reins.—The men fall back two paces, and face their horses.—All officers link at their posts in squadron, and then draw their swords.—Quarter-masters, farriers, and one file per division of the squadron, remain with the horses—Trumpeters and music run up, and form in two ranks behind the center interval.

The

FORM SQUADRONS! { The front rank faces to the right about, and the rear rank of each squadron faces outwards from the center.

MARCH!

HALT!

{ The front ranks march forward thirty steps, each squadron closing to its own center, and then receive the word *Halt!*—The rear ranks file quick from each flank, through the intervals of the horses, double round, and form close to the front rank, as well as the serrefiles from the rear.—Trumpeters and music are behind the center interval.

**OFFICERS TAKE
YOUR POSTS IN
BATTALION!
MARCH!**

{ The officers move quickly to their post in battalion and are placed as already mentioned—One on the right of each troop, one on the left of each wing, each of these covered by a non-commissioned officer in the rear rank, and the rest, as unappropriated, remain supernumerary behind the squadron.—The commanding officer is still in the front, and the other mounted field officers in the rear.

FORM BATTALION! A Caution.

**SUBDIVISIONS
WHEEL INWARDS!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!**

{ The squadrons wheel backward by subdivisions, facing to the center of the regiment, and receive the word *Halt, Dress!* from their several leaders.

MARCH!

The whole on an alignment.

HALT!

{ The two center squadrons when they arrive at wheeling up distance from each other, and reserving the breadth of three files for the standards, and intermediate serjeants.—
The other squadrons when they have closed up to wheeling distance from the one preceding.

WHEEL INTO LINE!

MARCH!

HALT, DRESS!

EYES—RIGHT!

{ The battalion is formed.—
The standards move quickly by the rear to occupy their place in the center.—The serrefiles divide themselves in the rear, and other individuals are placed, as directed for the battalion in the Infantry Regulations.

In this manner the battalion forms to its center, or to either flank, as directed, and whether it is composed of two, three, or four squadrons.

SHOULDER CARBINES!

FIX BAYONETS!

The battalion remains ready to march forward.

WHEN THE REGIMENT IS TO MOUNT.

The regiment being formed in front of their horses in order to mount.

RIGHT ABOUT, FACE!

QUICK MARCH!

HALT, FRONT!

{ When about 50 yards from the horses.

SUBDIVISIONS FROM

{ The sub-divisions wheel backwards, and front outwards

THE CENTER OUT-
WARDS WHEEL!

MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!

wards from the center of the regiment.

Standards and officers move quick, and join their respective squadrons.

QUICK MARCH!
HALT, FRONT!

Each squadron by its leader is halted and fronted, when opposite the center of its horses.

SPRING CARBINES!

RIGHT ABOUT FACE!

A caution.

MARCH!

The line again retires, each squadron by its center, and the whole by the right squadron, to within 30 yards of the horses.

FILE TO YOUR
HORSES!

The rear rank files quickly off from each flank, and the front rank marches on, opening their files, and halt within two paces of their horses.

UNLINK HORSES!

The men move up to their horses, and unlink, doubling up the collar rein in the left hand, and holding the bridoon rein in each hand, close to the horses head.

PREPARE TO MOUNT!

Files rein back: let down swords; shorten reins; seize the mane; twist it round the left thumb, and take the stirrup with the right hand.

MOUNT!

On the word.

FILES THAT DOUBLED
—MARCH!

The doubled files move up.

The

REAR RANK TAKE } The front rank at the
CLOSE ORDER! } same time attending to its
MARCH! } dressing.

SIT AT EASE! Immediately fasten links, &c. &c.

SQUADRONS CENTER } Each squadron quickly ad-
DRESS! } justs itself by its own center.

REGIMENT, RIGHT } Markers advance a few
DRESS! } yards from each squadron,
line well, and the regiment
dresses up to them.

The regiment is prepared to take its intervals, or whatever other situation is ordered.

INSPECTION, OR REVIEW OF A REGIMENT OF CAVALRY.

The regiment marches to its ground in open column of such front as circumstances allow of. Forms on the alignement in close order, with intervals equal to one third of the squadron. Every individual is at his post in squadron, and also acquainted with his post in battalion, when the regiment dismounts. The regiment takes open order in the manner directed. The trumpets assemble on the right of the regiment in two ranks; and the staff, &c. of chaplain, surgeon, mate, adjutant, are on the right of the trumpets in the line of front rank, one horse's length from it; and half a horse from each other.

In this disposition, and eyes to the right, the general is awaited.—He is to be received with the compliments due to his rank, as set forth in the regulation of military honours. On this occasion the senior officers are at the head of squadrons, and the commanding

manding officer of the regiment is one horse's length before the center of the whole.

A point is to be originally marked about 150 yards in front of the center of the regiment, where the general is supposed to take his station : but although he may chuse to quit that position, still that spot is to be considered as the point to work upon, and to which all movements and formations are relative.

Receiving the General.

DRAW SWORDS!

When the reviewing general presents himself before the center, or before any other part of the regiment (or line) the whole DRAW SWORDS, at three motions, the officers coming down at the last motion to the position of the salute, in which situation they make a sufficient pause, and then recover with the commanding officer. During this operation the whole of the trumpets sound, according to the rank of the general, and standards only salute such persons, as from rank and regulation, are entitled to that honour.

The general then goes towards the right (accompanied by the commanding officer) and the whole remain steady, without paying any farther compliment while he passes along the regiment, during which time music will play or trumpets sound, and they will cease when the general has returned to the right flank of the regiment, and is going away from it.

When

EYES—LEFT!

{ When the general turns the left of the left squadron, and passes betwixt the ranks, that squadron turns eyes to the left, as does each of the others as he approaches them.

EYES RIGHT!
SLOPE SWORDS!

{ When the general is going from the regiment, each squadron dresses to the right, and slopes swords.

REAR RANK TAKE
CLOSE ORDER!
MARCH!

{ While the general is proceeding to place himself in the front, this command will be given, and the regiment prepare to march past. On this particular occasion the officers will be cautioned not to alter their situations, but to remain as at ORDER.

Marching Past.

THREE'S—RIGHT
WHEEL!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

{ The general having taken his position, the regiment is ordered to wheel to the right, ranks by three's: All the officers, &c. face to the right, and each is in the line of a rank of sixes.—Trumpeters wheel into one rank, and the staff of surgeon, chaplain, &c. do not march past.

MARCH!

{ To the flank and in the continuation of the former front, which is marked accordingly.

{ When the head of the regiment is about 200 yards from where its center stood, it will be

RIGHT SHOULDER
FORWARD!
FORWARD!

be led circling on a moveable pivot into a new direction, and march down perpendicular to the line on which it is to pass the general, the head of each squadron changing direction where the front one does.

HALF SQUADRON!
HALT! WHEEL UP!
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH!
EYES, RIGHT!
TAKE ORDER!

When the head of the leading squadron arrives within five yards of the line on which it is to pass the general, the several words to form the right half of that squadron, and dress to the right, are given rapidly and successively; officers, trumpets and men front, and when the half squadron has moved on 20 yards, the command is given to take order; the trumpets nimbly move forward, and place themselves in two ranks before the commanding officer, and sound a march. The farriers are a horse's length behind the center of their troops, and the quarter masters behind the farriers.

In this manner, each half squadron clears the ground for its succeeding one, which performs the same operation preparatory to passing.

CARRY SWORDS!
EYES—RIGHT!

When the leading halfsquadron is within 30 yards of the general, swords are carried; and the officers look to the commanding officer, in order to salute with him.

Passing the General.

The flank of the leading half squadron having been directed in a line, which conducts about four yards before the general; when it arrives about ten yards short of him, the officers salute with the commanding officer, and at the last motion of dropping their swords, dress to the right.—The whole must march at a steady pace, firm, upright, well dressed, and eyes fully turned on the general.

EYES—CENTER!

{ When the rear rank has passed the general ten yards, officers recover their swords with the commanding officer. The standard does not salute in passing, except as before specified.

TAKE CLOSE ORDER!

{ When the second squadron is passing the general, the first one closes ranks.

Thus each half squadron successively passes.

LEFT—WHEEL!
HALT!—DRESS!
MARCH!

{ When the first half squadron has passed the general about 150 yards, it wheels to the left, and is successively followed in open column by all the others.

In this manner the column proceeds, and makes three more wheels at the angles of the ground, till the leading half squadron has arrived on the line of passing the general; it there halts about thirty yards from him, and the other half squadrons continue to close up to quarter distance in its rear.—The trumpets join their several troops in order to file past with them, unless they are particularly ordered, all to file at the head of the regiment, and afterwards to assemble opposite the general.

As

TO THE FRONT—
FILE!

As soon as the leading half squadron halts, it is ordered to FILE past and immediately commences.—Trumpet, captain, lieutenant, cornet, serjeants, corporals, privates, from which every flank brings the tallest men in front; first, the front rank, then the rear rank, closed by the farrier and quarter-master.—Each man is half a horse's length from whoever precedes him; he must be well placed, look steadily at the general, and have his horse sufficiently animated, and neither sluggish nor restless.—The commanding officer remains near the general during the time of filing.

The file must cover exactly, pass within three yards of the general, each man and horse square, follow a perfect straight line, and the head be so conducted, that the rear may never be obliged to halt, or hurry: The commanding officer of each troop will therefore come out on the flank as soon as he has passed, in order the better to regulate the file.—No man is on any account to halt, or to hurry in passing, but to keep the same steady walk, even if the front should improperly get from him.

Officers salute separately when opposite the general.—The standard is with the leading troop of the squadron it belongs to, and does not salute, *except* as specified. There is a distance of two horses length betwixt the leader of the passing troop, and the quarter-master of the one that precedes him.

When the head of the
troop has passed the general

HALT!

HALT!

ral 50 yards, it will halt, till the rest of the file has gradually and quietly formed up to it; it will then move on 50 yards farther, and halt till the chief part of the troops have, in the same manner, filed past, formed up, and are closed up in its rear in column, at quarter distance.

MARCH!

Just before the rear troops have closed up, and so as that the last one may not make any unnecessary pause on the ground, the leading one will be put in motion, and each successively will follow it in open column, when it acquires its proper distance.

Left wheel!
Halt! Dress!
March!

The leading half squadron will wheel to the left, and proceed to the flank of the ground on which the line is to form: it will there again wheel to the left, and march in the alignment, till it arrives at the right flank of the ground, followed by the others in open column.

Left wheel!
Halt! Dress!
March!

HALT!
WHEEL INTO LINE!
MARCH!
HALT! DRESS!

The whole will then be ordered to halt, and wheel up into line.

Should a regiment not be directed to file past.—It will,

will, after passing by half squadrons, enter the alignment, and form upon it.

SLOPE SWORDS!

CARRY SWORDS!

In general swords will be carried with the blade resting on the hollow of the shoulder, and by the word **SLOPE SWORDS.**—

On other ordered occasions, and in parade, they will be carried upright, at the word **CARRY SWORDS.**

EYES—RIGHT!

The regiment being now formed on their original ground, about 150 yards from the general, will be cautioned to dress to the right, and prepare to dismount.

RETURN SWORDS!

**CLOSE TO THE CENTER
OF THE REGIMENT,
TO DISMOUNT!**

PREPARE TO DISMOUNT!

DISMOUNT!

LINK HORSES!

FORM BATTALION!

SHOULDER CARBINES!

FIX BAYONETS!

As directed more particularly in the article of dismounting and forming the battalion.

The regiment while dismounted, and acting on foot, follows in every respect the rules prescribed for the battalion in the Infantry Regulations.

REAR RANK TAKE OPEN
DISTANCE!
MARCH!

Officers, &c. in the front
and in parade order.

THE BATTALION WILL
ADVANCE!

MARCH!

The directing serjeant
from between the standards
moves out six paces to the
front, and two of the stand-
ard coverers advance, and
line with him.—Music
play, and trumpets sound.

HALT, DRESS!

By the center, when
within about 40 yards of
the general.

EYES, RIGHT!

General Salute.

PRESENT ARMS!

The men present arms,
and the officers salute, so as
to drop their swords with
the last motion of presented
arms.—The music will play,
and all the trumpets sound.
The standards drop, and
recover with the officers.

SHOULDER ARMS!

The men shoulder, and the
officers and standards re-
cover with the last motion.

Marching past.

TROOPS ON YOUR
LEFT, BACKWARD
WHEEL!

The regiment will break
into column of troops, the
right in front.—The co-
lumn is put in march, mu-
sic and trumpets being pre-
viously ordered to the head
of it.—Points will be ascer-
tained by the adjutant for
the

MARCH!
Halt, Dress!

MARCH!

Left, Wheel!
Halt, Dress!
March!

Left, Wheel!
Halt, Dress!
March!

Eyes, Right!

Rear ranks, take open
order!

the exact and several wheelings of the troops, so that their right flanks in marching past, shall be only four paces distant from the point where the general is supposed to place himself to receive the salute.

These several troops wheel successively at the first angle of the ground, which may be about 100 yards from where the center of the regiment stood.

The troops make this wheel at the second angle of the ground, and which brings them on the line on which they pass the general.—Each leader of a troop, when it has advanced six paces from the wheeling point, changes his position quickly by the rear to the right flank of his troop, and as soon as he has placed himself on that flank, he will order
Eyes, Right!

The leading troop, and each other successively, as it arrives within fifty paces of the general, opens its ranks, at which time the officers, including those in serrefile, move into the front of the troop; the leading one being replaced on the right flank by his
coverer.

| coverer.—The command-
| ing officer of the troop is
| the right officer.

In marching past the reviewing general—The music or trumpets in two ranks, led by a non-commissioned officer, are in front—The colonel is at four paces distance—The field officers a horse's length behind the colonel—The officers of the leading troop four paces from the field officers—The front rank of that troop three paces from their officers: and thus successively to the rear.

The eldest lieutenant-colonel is in the rear of the whole, as in the infantry, but in the absence of the colonel he will supply his place.—The adjutant is behind and on the left of the lieutenant colonel.—Such trumpets as are not in front, are on the left flank of their respective troops.—All serrefile serjeants are closed up within one pace of their rear ranks.—The standards are two paces behind the center of the fourth troop, in one rank; and their coverers, and the serrefiles of that rank, are in the same line with them.—Staff officers do not march past.

In marching past at open ranks, the serjeant or coverer who is on the right flank of the troop, is responsible for the proper wheeling distance of his troop being kept from the front rank of the troop preceding him.—The leading officer on the right must invariably preserve his distance of three paces before the right of the troop, and not derange its march: the rank of officers dress to it; eyes are turned a little to the right, and they divide their ground, in order to cover the front of the troop.—If there is only one officer with the troop, he is towards the right of it.

The music begin to play just after the leading troop has made the wheel, which brings them on the line of the general (they must at all times take care, and be duly instructed to play exactly in the ordered times of march, viz. the *Ordinary March*, seventy-five

five steps in a minute ; the *Quick March*, 108 steps in a minute : and there can be no excuse for their being permitted in any instance to alter or vary these times of march, to which in their daily practice they must be strictly habituated) ; they continue to march on, and do not draw up opposite the general, unless particularly desired so to do.

The officers, when they arrive at a proper distance from the general, must prepare to salute successively by troops, when within six paces of him, and recover their swords when ten paces past him, without in the least altering the rate of march, or impeding the front rank of troops.—The commanding officer, when he has saluted at the head of the column, places himself near the general, and remains there till the rear has marched past.—Each trumpet on the flank sounds, when the officers of his own troop salute.

Rear rank take close order !

{ The officers commanding troops will each successively, when he has passed the general by thirty paces, close his rear rank, and at this time each individual of the troop resumes the post which he held when the column was first put in motion.

*Left, Wheel !
Halt ! Dress !
March !*

{ The several troops wheel successively when opposite the ground where the left of the regiment stood, their leading officers having shifted to their left flank when the ranks closed.

**HALT !
SUPPORT ARMS !**

{ When the leading troop is near to where the left of the battalion stood, the whole halt, music ceases, arms may be supported, and

{ and the *Quick March* may
instantly commence.

Marching past in quick Time.

QUICK MARCH! { The whole march off in
quick time—no music.

Left—Wheel!
Halt, Dress!
Quick, March!

{ The column makes three
several wheels, viz. at the
point where the left of the
battalion stood; at the point
where the first wheel was
made; and at the point where
the second wheel was made,
which places it on the line of
passing the general.

CARRY ARMS!

{ Before the leading troop
has made the last wheel, arms
are carried. When it has
completed that wheel the mu-
sic begin to play.

In marching past the general in quick time, and at close order, officers do not salute or pay any compliment, but are attentive to preserve the proper wheeling up intervals betwixt their troops.—The leading officer of each troop shifts to its right, by its rear, in the same manner as in the ordinary march, six paces after the last wheel, which brings him on the line with the general, and when he has passed the general thirty paces, he will resume his proper pivot flank.—The serrefile officers and serjeants march in a rank in rear of the troops, at one pace from the rear rank, and officers' swords are carried against the right shoulder and steady.

The colonel, field officers, standards, adjutant, trumpets, music, are in the same situation as in marching past in ordinary time, and the music will
com-

commence playing just after they have wheeled into the line of passing, and will continue to march on at the head of the column.

Eyes left !

{ The several troops, thirty paces after passing, will successively dress to the left, the proper pivot flank, and the officers will shift to that flank.

*Left Wheel !
Halt ! Dress !
March !*

{ The troops successively wheel when opposite to the ground where the left of the battalion stood.

**HALT !
MARCH !**

{ When the head of the column approaches to the left of the ground, on which it originally saluted the general, the music will cease, and the column will be halted in order to take up the ordinary march, for the purpose of moving on an alignment.

*Left Wheel !
Halt, Dress !
March !*

{ When at the point on the left of the alignment.

Forming in Line.

**HALT !
WHEEL INTO LINE !
MARCH !
HALT, DRESS !**

{ The column prolongs the alignment till arrived at the point where its head, or right is to be placed.—It receives the word Halt ! pivots are instantly corrected if necessary, it wheels up into line, and every individual is at his post in battalion.

The

The regiment being at a due distance from the general (about seventy yards) and in close order: the commanding officer will order it to prime and load with cartridge, and proceed with the firings.

MANUAL
EXERCISE!

But should the performance of the manual, and platoon exercise be previously required—The commanding officer, after the line has formed, gives a caution to that purpose, and goes to the rear of the battalion.—The major advances to the front,—opens ranks,—unfixes bayonets,—shoulders arms.

He then makes the officers take their post of exercise in the rear; by facing to the right: marching through the several intervals occupied by the serjeants, &c. and when three paces beyond the rear rank they halt, and then receive the word Front.—The commanding officer; field officers; adjutant; serrefile serjeants; trumpets; music, are at their posts in the rear as when the battalion is formed at close order; the standards are in the ranks at their posts, and an officer remains on each flank of the battalion.

MANUAL EXERCISE!

The major proceeds with the manual as directed by regulation; observing that the front rank only comes down to the last position of the charge bayonets, the others remain ported.—The serjeants who are in the ranks exercise with the men.

PLATOON EXERCISE !

{ The major closes rear ranks for the platoon exercise, and officers and every other individual take their places as when the battalion is at close order.

The major proceeds with the platoon exercise according to regulation.

After the manual and platoon, the battalion remains formed at close order, and the major returns to his post in the rear; and the commanding officer comes to the front.

FIRINGS.

{ The commanding officer orders the battalion to prime and load—And the regiment is now prepared for such firings as may be ordered and are consonant to the principles established by regulation.—The advancing and retiring in the firings will be performed in quick or slow time, as ordered.

After the volley, carbines are loaded and shouldered, and the regiment is prepared to mount.

MOUNT, &c. &c.

{ As directed in the article of mounting.

SQUA-

SQUADRONS FROM
CENTER TAKE
INTERVALS!
THREE'S WHEEL —
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!
MARCH!
HALT!
THREE'S WHEEL UP!
MARCH!
HALT, DRESS!

The regiment will wheel outwards from its center ranks by three's—march on an alignement marked to each flank.—The squadrons will severally be halted, when they have acquired their interval distances—Front into line, and the line to be dressed to a flank.

The regiment remains formed at close order, ready for evolutions, movements, or attacks, as ordered.

EVOLUTIONS!

If the whole evolutions are not performed, they must be arranged so as to follow each other with propriety on the ground, before the general; and the connecting circumstances of March, Halt, Front, &c. must be applied according to the situation of the squadron.

WHEELINGS in Squadron. }
INCLINING the Regiment. } According to regulation.

Plate 13.

MOVEMENTS AND ATTACKS.

The line is formed about 100 yards from the general.

1.
The open column } The column of divisions is formed by the wheeling back of divisions. The column passes and takes up its ground at

of divisions trots past the general, and again forms in line on the ground it quitted.

at a trot. The flank leaders do not quit the pivot flanks, but they may order their divisions to turn their eyes to the right during the instant of passing.

2.

Change of position on the left flank by throwing back the right the eighth of the circle.

The right is thrown back the eighth of the circle, by the diagonal march of half squadrons to the rear.—(S. 71.)

3.

Change of position in open column, the left thrown back.

The line breaks into open column of divisions, the right in front, and is put in motion. The three or four leading ones take a new direction, parallel to the original one, by wheels to the left. The leading division again changes its direction, by a half wheel to the left, and when the three or four behind it have also wheeled into the new direction, the column is halted (the parts of it being now placed in three different directions); and the rear divisions are ordered to enter it by flank marching (S. 34.) The line is formed by the wheeling up of divisions to the left.

4.

Change of position on the right flank;

The line changes position on the right flank by the diagonal marching up of half squadrons, and a line is formed parallel to the original one,

the left thrown forward.

one, out-flanking it on the right, and something more distant from the general.—
(S. 71.)

5.

The close column is formed—marches—and deploys into line.

{ Close column of half squadrons is formed behind the left. (S. 56.)

{ The close column marches to the right flank, till it is opposite the general (S. 57.), and halts and fronts.

{ The close column deploys on a center half squadron. (S. 61.)

6.

Countermarch of the divisions of the open column.

{ The line wheels into open column of divisions, the right in front,—advances a short distance and halts.

{ Countermarches its divisions, and becomes a column, the left in front. (S. 45.)

{ Marches, returns to its former ground and halts.

7.

The open column changes position to the flank, by the flank march of its divisions.

{ The column, by the flank march of each of its divisions, moves two hundred yards to the rear. Halts and fronts again into column, the left in front. (S. 40.) The column wheels into line.

8.

Attack by squadrons successively.

{ The line attacks to the front, by squadrons from the right; each moving when the one preceding it has just finished its attack.—They successively arrive and halt in line.

9. The

9.
The line retires in
echellon.

The line retires by echel-
lon of squadrons from the
left, each thirty yards be-
hind the other, and when
the second squadron is at a
sufficient distance, it is or-
dered to halt and front, and
the others immediately come
into line with it.

10.
The line attacks to
the front.

Directed by a named squa-
dron, it halts and dresses.

11.
The line retires
and forms two co-
lumns.

The two right squadrons form
column of half squadrons, be-
hind the adjoining half squa-
dron at quarter distance.

The whole retire (ranks by
three's) Halt, Front; when or-
dered the column closes up, and
at the same time, the two left
half squadrons form also in close
column, behind their adjoining
right one.

Although this disposition is formed during the re-
treat, it may be supposed an original one made at a
distance from the enemy, and taken up from column
of march to the front.

Fig. 72.

12.
Attack of the ene-

The left column deploys into
line, and at the same time the
right column (except the front
half squadron) wheels to the
right by three's, marches, and
the heads of the half squadrons
take a new oblique direction.
—When these have gone 100
yards or more, the leading di-
vision is fronted and dressed, so
as to be nearly perpendicular

my in front, and flank.

to its charging point (the enemy's flank), it advances, and the others proceed to the flank, so as successively to front, and come up to its right, and that of each other, during which the movement of the line is also carrying on, and made to correspond to this flank attack (S. 102)—After the attack pursuers are detached.

13.

Retire in two lines by alternate half squadrons.

The regiment retires by alternate half squadrons in two lines (S. 99.) covered by skirmishers, and the right flank attack gradually during the retreat, takes its proper line and distances from the left squadrons, so that the regiment may be again in line, about the time it is ordered to halt and front.

The two left squadrons form column of divisions at quarter distance, behind the left division of the adjoining squadron. This may be supposed an original disposition taken up from column of march to the front.

The column marches from its rear, (as in S. 46.) moves in open column, and is conducted (S. 101.) into the line, which is to place it obliquely (not perpendicularly) to the flank of the enemy; when its head is sufficiently advanced, it wheels up into line of half squadrons, at half intervals, (which are taken during the

14.
Attack of the ene-
my in front, and
flank.

the movement) and instantly moves on to the attack (its position being such, that its inward flank shall not in the charge interfere with that of the other line which has to pursue a different direction) together with the squadrons before in line, whose movements are made corresponding to it, that the whole may arrive on the enemy at the same time.

15.
Retire in two lines.

The half squadrons of what was the column, by a flank march, ranks by three's, place themselves in second line, at 60 yards distance behind the other squadrons, and so as to outflank that line on one flank by a half squadron.—During this the front line detaches skirmishers, and in due time both lines retire together; and when ordered, halt and front, and the second line is ordered to form up to the first.

The regiment attacks in two columns of half squadrons from the center. The two center half squadrons close to each other, move on, charge through the line, and gradually and successively halt: when these begin to advance, the rest of the line on both flanks wheel inwards by three's; each two half squadrons unite, front, and follow at a distance

16.

Attack of Infantry.

of 70 or 80 yards behind each other, and attack successively in the following manner.

The two leading ones proceed as above. The second ones before they arrive at the line, make a quarter wheel (half squadrons) outwards, pass the line in that direction, and gradually come to a halt.—The third ones, when they come on the line, wheel (half squadrons) outwards, charge along the line a certain distance, and then wheel up to the front.—The fourth ones halt upon the line, ready to support to the front, or to either flank. All the half squadrons as they halt, detach some pursuers, whose business is not a distance, but in the neighbourhood of their squadron. If there is a second line, it supports or acts as ordered.

17.

The regiment retires in two columns from the flanks,

The Regiment thus irregularly placed, calls in pursuers, and at the same time retires (rear rank leading) from each flank in column of divisions, which approach each other nearly within four yards) when behind the center; the whole thus following in two columns at half distance.—The head of the column halts, and the other divisions close up to quarter column.

The

{ The whole are then ordered
to front, ranks by three's.

The regiment may be supposed thus assembled from a march forward, and that it has a defilé in its front, which it is to pass, form in line of divisions, and then to advance.

18.

The Regiment passes a defilé, and forms in line of divisions.

{ The two leading divisions file (each two men in front) from their inward flanks, open out to a distance of half their front, and when about 50 yards advanced, their fronts halt, and they form in line.

{ When the leading divisions are completely in file, a command is given, and each of the others at the same instant files from its inward flank along its own front, and is then conducted to its head point in the line, and thus successively form up to the two leading divisions, till the whole is in a line of divisions, an officer at the head of each, at half distance of intervals.

This mode is prescribed in this particular situation, to shew a readiness and quickness in extending into line; but was the whole of the column actually to pass a defilé, on a very narrow front, each division must of course do it on the same narrow front as its leading one, be obliged to go over the same ground, and the formation would be much longer, and be a successive one from center to flanks of the line.

19.

Attack to the front.

{ The regiment in line of divisions makes a short attack to the front, and sends out pursuers.

In

In line of half squadrons or divisions, and in all attacks made by them, an officer is at the head of each, and care must be taken that the standard is in the center of one of them.

20.
Line of squadrons
formed.

The Regiment wheels inwards by divisions to form the line of squadrons, and towards whatever division (which stands fast) will bring the center of the line, when formed, opposite the General, at the same time the signal is given for pursuers to return.

21.
Regiment advances
in parade.

Rear ranks are opened, and the regiment advances in parade order ; trumpets sounding, &c. &c. within thirty yards of the General,

Halt.

General——Salute.

The dismounting, evolutions, movements and attacks are such as seem essential, for the general practice of the regiment. The whole of them may not be required at any one exercise or inspection, and such therefore as are to be performed (always including the first seven movements if space allows) must be arranged and connected according to the extent of, and circumstances of the ground on which they are to be exhibited ; and on the smallest spot such changes of position may be made, as will clearly shew what may be expected from the body in more extended situations.

When the line of one, two or more regiments is at any time marching past in open column of any kind,
and

and at open or close ranks, it must occupy no greater extent of ground than when it originally wheeled into column. Its order is never to be broken or lengthened out, nor is the distance between divisions, squadrons, or regiments, ever to be increased, to make room for music, &c. in the intervals, or for its own partial appearance. The music of each regiment, (when any) will play in passing, but will continue to march on, unless otherwise at the time particularly directed.

When two or more regiments are exercised or reviewed together, they will be formed in one (or two) line with the ordered interval.—They will receive the general; march past; and may perform the same identical movements as before prescribed for the single regiment, observing the additional directions that are given for those of the line.—Dismounting, filing, or frequently marching past, will hardly be required from a considerable body of cavalry, whose great object, in movements of exercise or inspection, must be quick, but just, change of position, made at a rate which can maintain order and not exhaust the animal, and from which, when acquired, an immediate, firm, and vigorous attack can be made.—On such occasions, movements (and the larger the body the fewer and simpler they must be) executed by the general principles prescribed, are easily arranged, corresponding to the situation the body is supposed to be in with respect to the enemy, and also to the local circumstances of the ground.

The number of paces mentioned in the several movements are not positively prescribed, but are supposed to be nearly such as will give the intended relative situation.

No improper pauses should be made betwixt the connected parts of the same movement. The detached points necessary in formations should be timeously prepared

prepared and given by the persons who are so ordered.

Whatever explanations regard the movements of the regiment when dismounted, and the firings, &c. &c. will be found in the regulations, and in the review exercise prescribed for the infantry.

The intention of fixing upon some of the most essential cavalry movements, and thus directing them to be executed by each regiment when seen separately, is:—That thereby the inspecting General may be enabled to report the more minutely and comparatively on the performance by each regiment of the great leading points of movements.—He will therefore, besides the circumstances that relate to the dress and general appearance of man and horse, the exercise on foot, &c. &c. particularly observe and specify,

Whether or not

The original formation of squadrons and regiments is according to order.

The marches are made with accuracy, at the paces required, and on such objects as have been given.

The proper distances in column are at all times preserved.

The wheelings are made quick, just, and in the manner prescribed.

The formations into line are made true in the intended direction, without false openings, or necessity of correction: or that corrections, when necessary, are instantly made.

The changes of position are made with due celerity and justness.

The officers are alert in their changes of situation,
exact

exact in their own personal movements, and loud, decided, and pointed in their words of command.

The march in line is uniformly steady, without opening, floating, or closing.

The flank march is compact, firm, and without improperly lengthening out.

The officers and under officers give the aids required of them with due quickness and precision.

Hurry and delay in the movements are equally avoided.

In the firings, the loading is quick, the levelling is just, and the officers firm in their commands.

The officers, non-commissioned officers and men ride well, and the horses are active, vigorous, and well broken.

When a considerable body of cavalry, or when infantry and cavalry are united, and to act in corps, their combined operations, such as movements in column, echelon, or line: their formations: the conduct of attacks or retreats, &c. depending on numbers, and circumstances of ground or situation, can only be determined and applied according to the views of the commander.—But the great principles of movement laid down for the line will still direct, and the detail of execution will remain invariable, being compounded of those prescribed for the squadron, regiment, and line.

1st January, 1799.

HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS the Commander in Chief, having thought it necessary to give out the following Orders to the corps of cavalry encamped last summer near Windsor, is pleased to direct, that the same be communicated to all other corps of cavalry whatever, and that they shall be entered, observed, and considered, as Standing Orders, in farther Explanation of HIS MAJESTY's Regulations for the Formations and Movements of the Cavalry, of the year 1796.

In the course of the exercise of the Cavalry, His Royal Highness the Commander in Chief has observed, that notwithstanding His Majesty's Regulations were, and are established, for ensuring a perfect sameness in all operations whatever of the troops, and without which no body larger than a squadron, or single regiment, can possibly be managed, or act to effect; yet, that considerable deviations have taken place, in some regiments, from those regulations, in the execution of the prescribed movements, in the mode of giving the words of command, in the words of command themselves, and in other particulars: He therefore enjoins the strictest and most literal observance of those Regulations, in the training of all individual regiments in their quarters, so that not the least difference of execution may exist when they are assembled; but that without difficulty, or previous explanation, they may be prepared to act together, and execute the commands of the general, who himself is not to depart from the fixed principles, and modes of movement prescribed: And in ordering the strictest attention to be given to these circumstances,

His

His Royal Highness trusts on every future occasion he will see their good effects.

His Royal Highness further directs an exact conformity to the following points, that have more particularly met his observation.

That commanding officers of regiments, brigades, or larger bodies, are moveable according to circumstances, and should by no means consider the center of such bodies as their general post in exercise or movements, or expect by the exertion of one voice, from one fixed situation, to command and direct the whole; their presence is more frequently required near one, or the other flank; in general they should be at the conducting point of movement, or formation, and to that address their orders by voice, or message; for if that point is led, or placed in the direction it should take, there is little danger of the parts of the body not properly and successively conforming to it.

There are many situations in the movements of great bodies, where commands, that are not immediately to influence the whole, are not given loud, but quietly, to the directing body, to whose situation the rest by the eye conform; as when the head of an open column is ordered to halt, that the rest of the divisions may move on, and successively stop in close column: and on all occasions where parts only of a large body are to march, or halt successively, commanding officers of regiments should have an attention to give their commands in such manner, as not to produce an alteration in those points that are not meant to be influenced by them at that instant.

Where a large body is marching in column, or columns, through narrow ground, and when its parts are to be assembled beyond the defilé in several lines, in a compact manner behind each other—such parts are not to begin to assemble when the leading one does, but the head of each line is successively first to come up to the ground on which it is to stand, and

A A

when

when it there halts, its proper followers (and not before) move into line with it, and thereby do not impede the bodies that are behind them, which are still in the defilé, and are to perform the same operation.

Words of execution, such as *March, Halt, Trot, Gallop, &c.* are ordered to be pronounced short, loud and sharp, and by no means to be lengthened out, or given in a drawling tone of voice; if necessary, they may be repeated more than once in quick movements.

The words of command, as marked in the Regulations, are to be strictly made use of, and no other substituted in their room: in the quick movements and manœuvres of cavalry, they must be rapidly given; are ordered (S. 13.) to be much abridged, and all expletives omitted.

Precision of movement depends altogether on the instant circulation of commands of execution, and that on the attention of officers to the point they may be expected to come from: unless the whole of a body, however large, is put in motion at the same instant, a column will be extended, and a line will be ill dressed, and with false intervals.

The principles of all cavalry evolutions, and movements, may, to great advantage, be practised, and learnt on foot, making use of the cavalry formations, tellings off, words of command, and method of execution; not of those peculiar to the infantry.

When a new line to be marched or formed upon, is taken up by markers, commanding officers of squadrons, of regiments, and all other persons whatever, will take care that during such operation, they do not stand upon, or obscure the direction of that line.—In general, too many markers are thrown out: the Regulations are full and explicit on that head. In movements in column, commanding officers of squadrons, and regiments, should keep wide of the flanks, that the pivot leaders may more correctly follow

low each other, and that they themselves may the better see, and distinguish the relative situation of the whole.

Officers do not sufficiently attend to the difference between changes of direction made by *Wheel*, and by *Shoulder forward*. In the first case, one flank remains fixed, while the other is on the wheel; in the second case, both flanks continue in motion, (as in S. 8.) *Shoulder forward*, applies to a small front, and to a column of march, where the change of direction is to be made gradually, without an alteration of the pace. In proportion to the front of the body so changing, must be the degree of sweep made by both flanks, and in all cases the reverse flank conforms to the pace of the pivot flank, and in no case can it be made short and quick, otherwise it becomes a wheel.

So many of the operations of the squadron, regiment, and of the line, depend on the leading, and well conducting of the divisions of squadrons, of half squadrons, or of entire squadrons in *Ranks of three's*, that in the quarters, of regiments, squadrons, or troops, the practice of the movements of ranks by three's, should be considered as the most essential point to be attended to. There can be no quarter whatever, where there is not ground to exercise, and apply this movement to squadrons, and smaller bodies: and commanding officers of regiments must see every officer critically perform this duty.—It must be made at all paces; it is in general, (except in column of route) a quick movement, and the changes in its direction are made, by attention to the conducting officer, and by shoulder forward; it must be led, both in straight and in waving lines, and the body be accustomed at once (as when connected with greater bodies) to form quickly to front, to rear, to right, to left—It must march by the pivot flank, close, and without opening out, as at the moment when it first wheels, and quits its original ground.—As this is the

smallest front on which any body, from a division of a squadron to a line, can make a flank movement, without a material extension, its general use and application must be felt by, and be obvious to every one. If a regiment, or line is to perform this operation, the utmost activity must be exerted, and the whole are put at once in motion, which depends on the quick eye and order of commanding officers of regiments. Quick movements and formations of ranks by two's, made with accuracy, are also an essential practice ; and the quick breaking off, doubling, and moving up in the march in line ; and (without halting that line) to avoid obstacles of ground should be much attended to.

An alertness, knowledge, and practice of the duties of advanced, and rear guards, of patrols, of flanking parties, of skirmishing, is common and essential to cavalry of all denominations ; and although light troops are more frequently employed, than regiments of the line, on those occasions, yet every regiment should be equally adroit, and instructed in these services, and able to take care of itself in all situations. Every regiment in quarters, is therefore to make an attainment of these points, an essential object of its practice and exercise ; and commanding officers are to instruct their young officers in a methodical, quick, and soldier-like discharge of these duties, which the arms, lately given to the cavalry, render equally easy to all. His Royal Highness has no doubt, that on future occasions he will see the effects of such instruction, and attention : in the attainment of which the following rules and circumstances are prescribed, both in exercise and in service.

Skirmishing.—Skirmishers or ranks detached to fire, should be at least 200 yards from the squadron if the ground allows.—When any part of the squadron is detached to attack, or fire, the remainder always support with drawn swords.—The standard always remains

mains with the body of the squadron, and never moves with any detached part of it.—Single skirmishers can take the surest aim with their carbines to the left; they will also occasionally fire to the front and to the right; but must take the greatest care not to hit or burn the horse's head, or at that time to spur him;—Skirmishers should always retire in proportion as the squadron retires; cover the front of it at 150 yards distance at least, and manage so as to keep up a constant fire; nor should they ever remain in a cluster to become a mark.—All firings are best performed on the move, and it is unnecessary to halt for that purpose only.—Whenever the line retires, skirmishers should be ordered out to cover the retreat, and should join at the first signal.—No skirmishers are ever to fire, but when advanced to the front, and never when behind other men.—Skirmishers, if not ordered to join, retire through the intervals when the line advances to charge; and form, and support.—The retreat of the line should be generally made at a brisk pace, to get quick off the ground; and no time ought to be lost in giving the proper signal, or word of command.—In detached open ranks, the officer commanding the rank is always most conveniently placed in the center of it, and the men dress and are directed by him.

Skirmishers are to be very attentive and alert in instantly obeying the signals made for their direction, particularly those of ceasing to fire, and of rallying to their divisions: and when the signal for calling in skirmishers is succeeded by that of rally made from the main body, the divisions themselves return quickly, even though they should not then be joined by their detached men.

Skirmishing detachments are usually made of a flank division or subdivision (or their front or rear ranks only) of squadrons.—*In advancing* these are rapidly sent forward about 150 yards in front of their respective squadrons, from which *body* are detached three

or *more files*, one hundred yards still farther forward, where they halt, fronting the enemy.—The outward flank files of this advanced detachment stand fast, while the others file inwards towards each other, in order to divide the ground, and cover the front of the reserve as well as that of their squadron.—This operation followed by all the detachments from the squadrons, will effectually cover the front of the corps.

In this situation the advanced line of skirmishers are to have their pistols or carbines at the recover, (if pistols, then the sword is to be slung to the wrist.)—The rear rank men will invariably cover those of the front rank, while the front rank advances in skirmishing.

When the front rank has fired, the rear rank is brought forward in its turn, by the officer or serjeant who is stationed between the two lines in order to see and direct the rear one.—The advancing line will regulate its pace by his, and will halt and dress by him when he halts.—For this movement of the rear line to the front, the officer or serjeant commanding gives the word, *Rear rank forward*, accompanied by a wide signal with his sword; the rear rank passes the front line fifty yards; when halted, the rear line begins to load.

The files of the front line must attend particularly to the circumstance of not firing till the rear line (their support) is loaded. On this principle will each rank pass through the other, successively firing and supporting each other.

Each man of the front rank, either in advancing, or retiring, will pass his rear rank man to his right, whilst the rear rank men under the same circumstances pass on the left. This regulation prevents any two men passing through the same interval.

In retiring. When the rank next the enemy has fired, it retires by the word of command, assisted by signal, and forms fifty yards in the rear of those by whom

whom they were before covered, and as they front immediately begin to load.—The instant the retiring line has past the supporting line, the skirmishers make a flank movement to each hand for a few paces and back again, in order not to be fixt marks for the enemy's skirmishers: at the same time they are occasionally to halt and fire as they perceive their rear file loaded—Thus the two lines retire through each other successively fronting and supporting.—To retire, the word of command is, *About*. To face the enemy, *Front*.—In retiring, each file turns his horse to the left about.—In fronting, he brings him to the right about.

Whenever skirmishers are called in, they form to the reserve, returning their pistols and sloping their swords, without waiting for any word of command to do so.—The officer commanding the division, puts the division about by three's and returns to his place in squadron.—But should the line be advancing to the charge, the divisions, if they can, will gain their place in squadron, and join in the charge: or otherwise they will form behind the squadron and support.

When a line or column moves to a flank, and that skirmishers are out, they are not to wait an order for them to conform to that movement of the main body, but will cover that flank which may be exposed to the enemy; for instance, if the movement of the line is to the right, then to the left of the line of march must be covered—and the reverse is to be observed in the opposite case.

The skirmishers covering a flank movement will march in single file, the rear rank man immediately behind his front rank file, judging the distance so as completely to cover the squadron, which should be out-flanked by its skirmishers rather than otherwise. The same principle of reserving the fire with the front line, till the rear support is loaded, must equally be attended to in flank movements, as in the cases of advancing or retiring; but in the practice there is this difference,

difference, that a front file in a flank movement cannot see when his reserve has loaded, therefore it is to be announced to him by the word *Ready*, when he will fire at discretion.

Advanced Guards and patrols on the flanks are in all situations essential to guard against a surprise, and the strength of both must depend upon that of the body in march, and other circumstances. Although in general, the movement of an army is so covered by light troops and advanced corps, that every other precaution seems unnecessary; yet no column or detached body is to neglect this military precaution for its peculiar safety; and the conduct of an advanced guard of an officer and 40 or 50 men may show the general principles on which more considerable bodies are to act on the same service.

The advanced guard in general marches about two hundred yards in front of the column, regiment, or smaller body; but the distance must depend on the nature of the country, which when woody, makes it necessary to remain nearer the main body, than when it is free from enclosures.

From the advanced guard, the officer detaches to his front, a serjeant and twelve men, who are to preserve the same distance from the officer's party, that the officer is from the column. The serjeant is in like manner to send two men forward, and detach two others, one on each flank, as side patrols, who are to keep in a line with those men most in advance. The officer will, for the same purpose, detach one non-commissioned officer and four men, on each of his flanks. The side patrols are distant between three and four hundred yards on the flanks, which distance varies according to the places they have to examine, and the impediments met with on the march. They are not to lose sight of each other for any length of time,

time, but to take the advantage of every height to look round them, and see that they preserve a corresponding line with each other, and the march of the advanced guard. The patrols must examine all villages, hollow ways and woods, that lie in the direction of their march, taking care to reconnoitre from the heights, the country below, before they descend into the vallies. As soon as the enemy is perceived, the person who discovers him, must fire a pistol to announce it; when the non-commissioned officer of the party will ride to the spot, and having made his observations, send a correct report of what he has seen to the officer, who is to convey it to the officer commanding the column.

It is a necessary precaution to send out side patrols from the column, and likewise a rear guard, when it is possible for an enemy to approach in that direction. The rear guard is to be conducted on the same principle directed for the advance.

An out-post having been taken up under a knowledge of the country, its *relief* will be conducted in the following manner:

When arrived at the post, the relief takes place by drawing up behind the old guard, who must be on horseback to receive the new guard. The number of men necessary for the relief of the videts (or sentries), are then to be marched off, and conducted by a non-commissioned officer of the old guard. The officers attend the relief, and the relieving officer must inform himself of the particular orders of every videt; have pointed out to him how far the videts are advanced by day, and where retired to at night; whether the enemy appeared during the preceding twenty-four hours, and in what direction.—He must ask the names of the villages, and the direction of the roads, which he will compare on the spot with his map.—He should know what patrols have been made,

made, to what distance, and how frequent; what posts his flanks communicate with; and, in case of an attack, the support to be expected, and from what quarters. He likewise will inform himself of the name of the field officer commanding the line of posts, and where he is to be found, in order to report to him if necessary.

The Relief having been made, the new guard will take up the same ground which the old one occupied. The men may dismount, but not take off their accoutrements, or be permitted to stray from their horses.

The horses are to be kept constantly bitted, except when feeding, which must never exceed one fourth of the number at a time, and at such hours as the enemy are least likely to appear.

No person is to be allowed to pass the out-post, without producing an order from the General commanding in chief; nor is any person to be permitted to approach the guard, under a pretence of selling provisions, or for any other purpose, without the officer first being informed of it.

The officer must visit his videts frequently by day, and keep constant patrols moving by night. The appearance of an enemy in force, their approach by night—or the desertion of any of the videts with the watch-word, must not only be immediately communicated to the field officer commanding, but to the posts on the right and left; and the *Countersign* be changed to guard against surprise.

Before sun set, if not done in the early part of the day, the officer should reconnoitre in front of his post; for which purpose he must determine from his map, the route to be taken, and with fifteen or twenty of his guard, he will advance on the same principle of caution pointed out for an advanced guard; only,
that

that the party must be concentrated, the force being less considerable and unsupported. An officer on out-post duty should be provided with a good glass, which in reconnoitring, will always be found very serviceable. Wherever two roads meet, the party should halt, till one of the roads is reconnoitred, without which, it cannot be safe to proceed on the other.

On duties of patrole, or reconnoitring parties, the men must be silent and watchful, and march at open files.

At night, Patroles are to be conducted in smaller bodies than reconnoitring parties, they will direct their march on the different roads leading towards the enemy. Three men are to be advanced in front of the patrole; two of whom may be a hundred yards, and the third man fifty more, in front of them—a caution always requisite to be taken to guard against surprise.

A non-commissioned officer, or junior officer, generally conducts the patrole, as the officer commanding must not leave his guard during the night.

The utmost silence is necessary to the safety of a patrole, and that they should march with files very open. The barking of dogs in villages occupied by the enemy—moving of lights, or any noise breaking in on the stillness of night, are tokens of the enemy being in motion; and to which patroles must direct their particular attention.

The guard will mount their horses an hour before sun set, and continue so till dark; likewise before day-break, and remain mounted, till the approach of an enemy may be clearly perceived, or that the relief arrives: which relief generally takes place at day-break, in order to have the guards doubled at the time most dangerous for surprise.*

As

* On the above subject, and on field service, much information is to be gained from the King of Prussia's Instructions to his Cavalry

As the *Cavalry Regulations* have not provided for several parade points of appearance, of a brigade, or larger body, the following circumstances are therefore to be observed.

When two or more regiments are formed in line to receive His Majesty, each individual is at the post already assigned him regimentally, except the trumpets, who are assembled on the right of their respective regiments, formed in two ranks, and these blow whatever marches or airs they are ordered.

The commanding officer of the regiment is at the head of the right squadron; the next senior officers are at the head of squadrons, to receive or to pass His Majesty.

The major-general of the brigade is also at the head of the right squadron of his brigade.

The lieutenant-generals are also at the head of the right of their divisions, or wings.

Although His Majesty generally arrives opposite the center of a single regiment, yet in an extensive line he may be often expected, at, or near the right, or left, and in that situation to receive the general salute; wherever His Majesty does arrive, he will be there received, and from thence attended by the general commanding the whole.

When His Majesty, or a general officer, is to pass between the ranks, they are always to be at full open order, and the distance, given by the right regiment, to be conformed to by the others.

Cavalry Officers, translated by Lt. Forster; also in *General Warnery's Treatise on Cavalry*, translated by Lt. Colonel Koehler, and *Instructions for Hussars and Light Cavalry* acting as such in time of War, all published by Egerton.

At

At a review or inspection, regiments, brigades, or lines, do not march past in column of squadrons, but in column of half squadrons.

In passing by in half squadrons at open ranks, the commander of the squadron will be in front of his leading half squadron, covered by the standard, with which the other officers of the half squadron dress.—In the second half squadron all its officers are in front, and in one line—The trumpets are all in front of the regiment, and when they have passed, wheel quickly round, and remain posted opposite His Majesty, and sound till the regiment has passed; when they cease (and those of the succeeding regiments commence), follow their regiment, and regain its front.

The half squadrons, or divisions, will dress, and cover to the passing hand after the successive wheel, which brings them on the line of passing; they will open ranks 60 or 70 yards, before they approach His Majesty, and close them about the same distance after passing, and they will continue so to dress, and preserve the line, till each division wheels at the point, where the head one has changed its direction; there, and not before, the dressing and covering will be made to the proper pivot flank of divisions, on which the officers will resume their posts.

The whole pass, (whether at open, or close ranks) as one column; nor is any division, squadron, or regiment, to increase, or alter the distances it possessed at the moment it wheeled from line into column.

In passing by half squadrons or divisions, at close ranks, the standard may take the center of the front rank of the leading one.—The commanding officer is before it, other officers are at their squadron posts, and care is taken, that there shall be an officer on each passing flank.

At the drawing of swords, and general salute, on His Majesty's approach, the trumpets all sound the

parade march. When His Majesty passes along the line, each regiment successively sounds its own march, or such other as it shall be ordered, and the same is done by each regiment when it passes His Majesty.

His Majesty's regulations have prescribed the soundings with which all generals, and other persons, are to be received; when they pass along the line, or the line before them, the trumpet soundings will be the same as before His Majesty.

The trumpet flourish, in drawing swords, is used regimentally on their own ground, and is the sounding used in receiving a major-general; it is repeated twice for a lieutenant-general, and to all superior generals, the march is sounded.

In parade, to receive His Majesty, or the commanding general, the trumpets are assembled on the right of their regiments, (whether single or in line) in two ranks, and the staff beyond them.—The staff does not march past.

On all occasions of exercise, and manœuvre, trumpets are behind their troops, and squadrons, unless otherwise detached.

If His Majesty sees a brigade, he will be received at the point of his approach, in the manner already directed, by the general commanding it—If a single regiment, in the same manner by its commanding officer.

After passing in parade, and in movements, and exercise, it will depend on the commanding officer of the regiment, to place the other field officers at the head of squadrons, or to assign them the superintendence of wings, in order the better to assist.

In general, regiments manœuvre at too great a distance from the person inspecting them; they ought to terminate many of their movements and formations within 20 or 30 yards of where he stands.

HIS MAJESTY'S regulations for the formations, movements, and field exercise of the infantry, are, in every point, to be followed, and applied to cavalry, when dismounted, and formed in battalion.

Cavalry regiments, when dismounted, and formed in line, will have an interval of six paces between each.

When the regiments dismount, field officers and adjutants do not dismount, but remain on horseback.

When the dismounted line advances in front, at close ranks, general officers, and commanding officers of regiments, are behind the center—other field officers are behind the flanks of the battalion.

When the dismounted line is at open ranks, field officers are on the flanks of the battalion, in a line with the men, and general officers, and commanding officers of regiments, are in front.

In passing on foot, all mounted officers are in front of the regiment, except the adjutant, who is in the rear.

The movements and operations of the cavalry and infantry, being founded on the same principles, are so similar in their details, that a knowledge of the one is essential to every officer of the other; and the infantry regulations being, in several points, more explanatory, than those of the cavalry, should be carefully perused for the elucidation of the other.

On the whole, His Royal Highness directs the strictest conformity to His Majesty's regulations of exercise, and movement.—He trusts that every officer, according to orders, is provided with a copy, so that by a constant reference to, and a study of their principles, the application and execution of them may become familiar and rapid.



HIS ROYAL HIGHNESS THE COMMANDER IN CHIEF having observed, that the soundings of the trumpet and bugle horn, for duties and exercise, are different in different regiments of cavalry ; in order to correct such an important point of service, and establish perfect uniformity, he has been pleased to direct that the notes of the following soundings shall be printed and published, and that all corps whatever, of cavalry, shall conform to and alone use them, for the purposes expressed by their titles, and explanation.

They may be divided into those of *duties* used in camp, and quarters ; and those of *exercise*, used in the movements, and *manœuvres* of the troops.

TRUMPET DUTY SOUNDINGS.

1. *Reveillé*
2. *Stable Call* — For stable duties.
3. *Boots and Saddles.* { When to turn out on horse-
4. *To Horse.* { back for a march, exercise,
or other duty.
5. *Draw Swords.* { These soundings begin at
6. *Return Swords.* { the instants of drawing the
sword *from*, and returning it
to the scabbard.
7. *Parade March.*
8. *Parade Call.* — For assembling on foot.
9. *Officers Call.* {
10. *Serjeants Call.* {
11. *Trumpeters Call.* {
12. *Orders.* {
13. *Dinner Call.* — For men and for officers.
14. *Watering Call.* { To turn out in watering
order.
15. *Setting the Watch.*

These duty soundings, according to situation, are given by one trumpet, or by the whole of the quarter, regiment, or camp.

TRUMPET EXERCISE SOUNDINGS.

16. *March.* { The squadron, regiment, or line
being halted, the trumpet of the
commander will accompany the
word, *The* will advance; and
at the *March*, the whole will move
at a walk.
17. *Trot.* { When the body is marching at a
walk, on the signal to trot, the whole
instantly receive the word *Trot*, and
change

18. *Gallop.*
19. *Charge.* } change pace immediately. The same is to be observed from the trot to the light *Gallop*, and from the gallop to the *Charge*.—During the charge itself, the trumpets of all the squadrons that are charging, may sound.
20. *Halt.* } The whole halt on the word of command. After the halt of a retreating body, the proper command will bring it to its proper front.
21. *Retreat.* } The signal of *Retreat*, (which will be often preceded by that of halt) is a general caution for the several words of execution to be given.
22. *Rally.* } The signal to *Rally*, may be continued as long as it is necessary, and be repeated by the trumpets of such parts of the body, as are concerned in the operation, till the end is answered.

These signals are given by the chief commander only of the whole body that is exercised, whether of a squadron, regiment, brigade, or a line; they are not repeated by other commanders; they are addressed as cautions to the commanding officers, of the parts of such body, not to the men, nor is any movement, or alteration of movement, to take place, but in consequence of the words, *march, trot, gallop, &c. &c.* rapidly and loudly repeated, the instant the trumpet caution is given.

The signals of movement are so short, that the words of execution may nearly coincide with them.

These signals for quick movement, may in regular exercise be given by a person who at the instant of giving them is stationary; but if he leads the body in motion, it is evident that in the gallop, the charge, and

and the halt, the voice and the eye, can only determine and regulate.

23. *Turn out
Skirmishers.*

This signal is made by the commander of the whole, if the whole is concerned, otherwise by the commander of such part only as is to execute; if one, or two squadrons only, the voice will suffice—It may be a signal for pursuers after a charge.

24. *Call in
Skirmishers.*

This signal is made by the commander of the whole, and repeated by the commander of detachments, for the skirmishers to join their detachments; or it may originally come from the commander of the detachments. On the signal to rally, the whole join the bodies they were detached from.

25. *Skirmishers
cease firing.*

This signal is made by the commander of the whole, and repeated (or originally made) by the commander of the supporting detachments, from which the skirmishers are advanced.

BUGLE HORN DUTY SOUNDINGS.

1. *Reveillé.*
2. *Rouse, or turn out.*
3. *Dinner Call.*
4. *Setting the watch.*

These soundings are different in their notes from those of the trumpet, but may be used under the same circumstances.

BUGLE HORN EXERCISE SOUNDINGS.

5. *March.*
6. *Trot.*
7. *Gallop.*
8. *Charge.*
9. *Halt.*
10. *Retreat.*
11. *Rally.*
12. *Turn out Skirmishers.*
13. *Skirmishers cease firing.*
14. *Call in Skirmishers.*

These soundings are exactly the same as those of the trumpet, in the place of which the bugle horn may occasionally be substituted.

THESE signals of the trumpet and bugle horn, are meant in aid of the voice, but are by no means to be substituted for, or prevent the *ordered* words of execution.

The trumpet is always to be considered as the principal military instrument for these soundings. It more particularly belongs to the line, and the bugle horn to detached parties.

By Order of His Royal Highness

THE COMMANDER IN CHIEF.

WILLIAM FAWCETT,

ADJUTANT GENERAL.

TABLE
explaining the
Several Figures, Marks &c.

The Positions are in general represented



The First



Intermediate



The last

Dotted Lines the March of different Bodies



Pointed Arrows the direction of the Movement



Blunted Arrows express the Markers necessary

for the Line of march or formation

Round Dots express the position of the Leaders of Divisions



The Letters A B &c denote different Divisions in the same Figure



The strong Line denotes the Front

The angled Arrow denote the wheel of a Division and the hand to which it relates



Counter-march



Threes about wheel



Threes right wheel



Threes left wheel

A Regiment formed at Close Order.

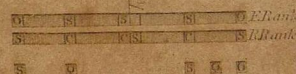
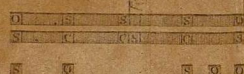
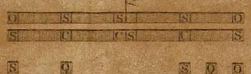
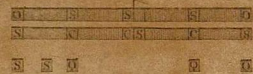
Commanding Officer

Squadron Officer

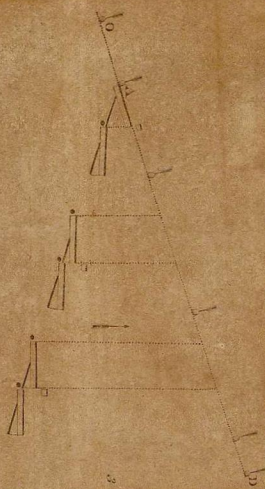
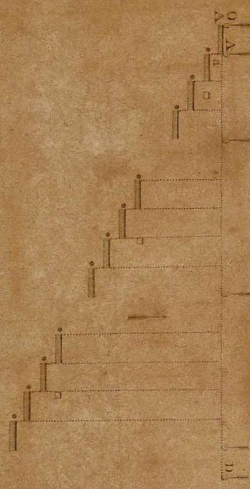
Squadron Officer

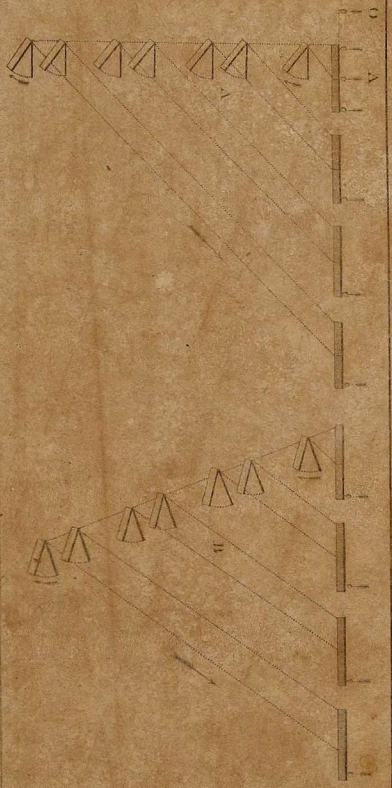
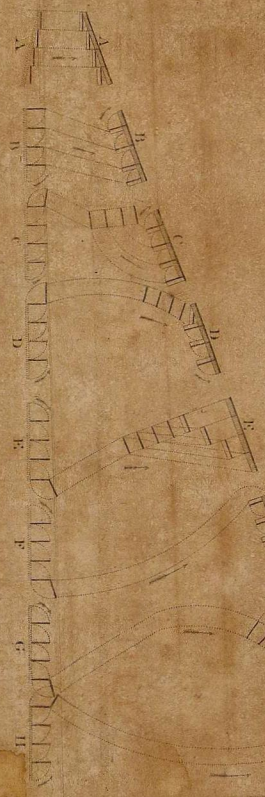
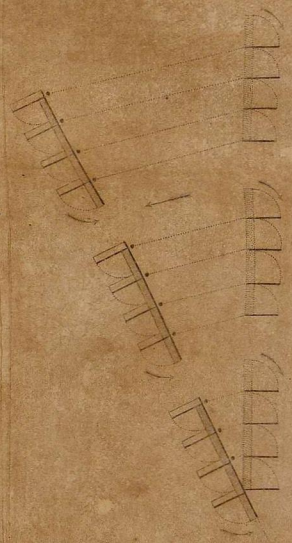
Squadron Officer

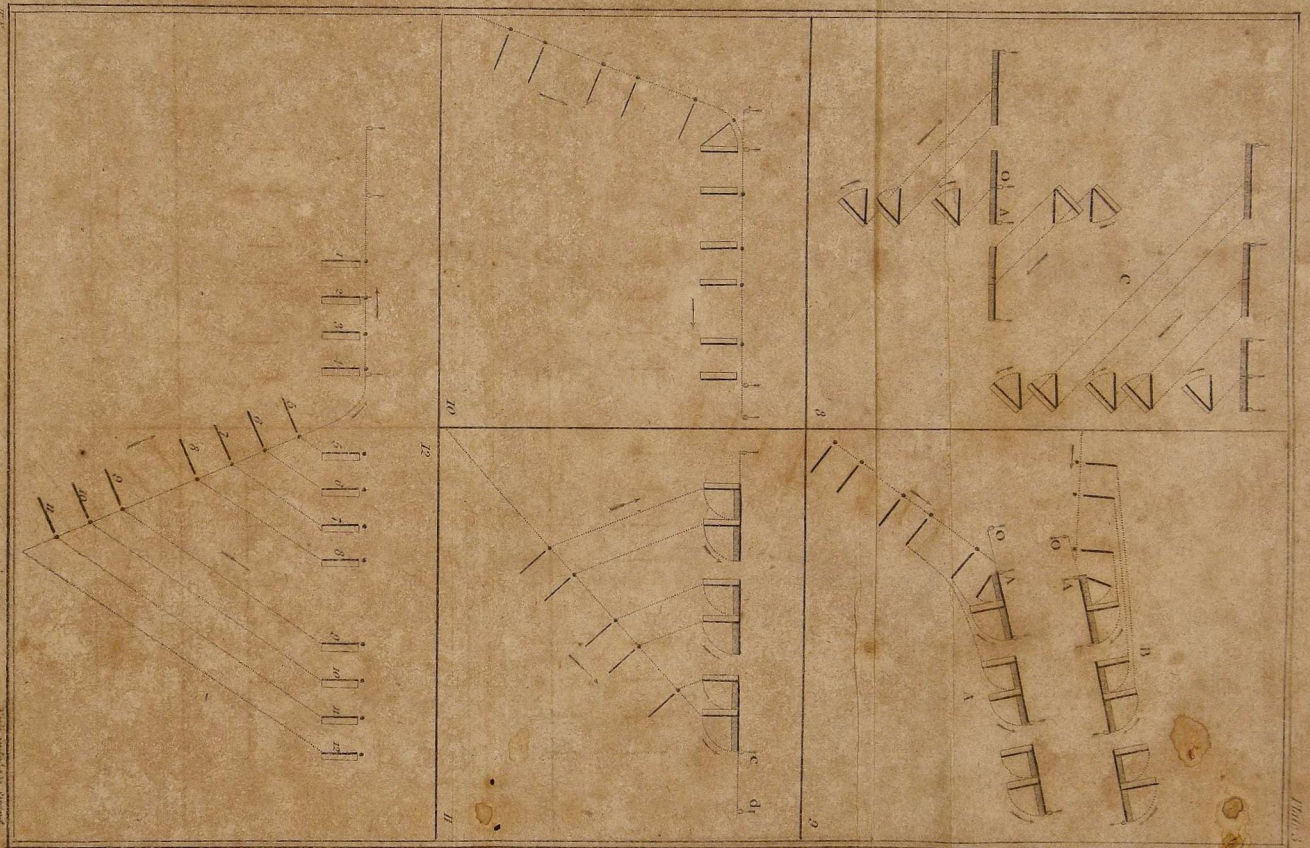
Squadron Officer



Servant and Supernumerary Officers









Handwritten musical notation on a five-line staff, consisting of a series of vertical strokes with flags, resembling a rhythmic pattern.

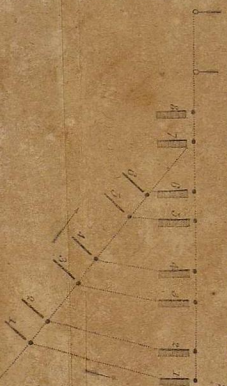
ϵ^m f f

22

23

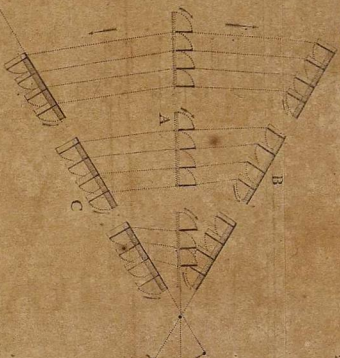
Handwritten musical notation on a five-line staff, consisting of a series of vertical strokes with flags, resembling a rhythmic pattern.

22



24

25



20

27

Handwritten musical notation on a five-line staff, consisting of a series of vertical strokes with flags, resembling a rhythmic pattern.



20

29

Handwritten musical notation on a five-line staff, consisting of a series of vertical strokes with flags, resembling a rhythmic pattern.

Handwritten musical notation on a five-line staff, consisting of a series of vertical strokes with flags, resembling a rhythmic pattern.

